EL-MOASSER GUIDE

CONNECT Plus

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الثانى

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

طبعة جديدة

طبق لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

GPS

تطبيق التعلم التفاعلى

DESERT ANIM

4th Primary 2024

SECOND TERM

Parents' Guide

دليل ولى الأمر



How to deal with "Reading Comprehension Question"

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم فى ورقة الامتحان

هو عبارة عن قطعة فهم تتكون من (٨٠-٩٠) كلمة وعلي الطالب أن يجيب عن الأسئلة التالية:
١- ثلاثة اسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:
(حدد الفكرة العامة في النص - وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص - حدد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص)
٢- سؤالين من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية :
(وضح العلاقة بين شخصين، حدثين أو فكرتين في النص - وضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص - وضح الرسالة/ الدرس المستفاد ، أو المغزى من النص)

Read the text and answer the questions below.

To stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. Keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Everyone should follow these instructions to stay safe online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Identify the general idea of the text. حدد الفكرة العامة فى النص.

1. This text is about "......................".
   a. pollution
   b. celebrating festivals
   c. having fun
   d. being safe online

- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص.

2. You should tell your .... if you're worried about something.
   a. neighbors
   b. friends
   c. parents
   d. classmates

- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

حدد معنى كلمات أو عبارات في النص.

3. The underlined word "online" means connected to the ....
   a. TV
   b. radio
   c. internet
   d. library

B. Answer the following questions.

- Describe the relationship between two pieces of information in a text.
وضح العلاقة بين معلومتين في النص.

- Why shouldn't you tell anyone your personal information?
- To stay safe online.

- Make logical inferences from the text. ضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص.

A • Infer استنتج the instructions you should follow to stay safe online. Mention two اذكر اثنين.

- Don't make friends with people you don't know.
- Don't send photos to people you don't know.

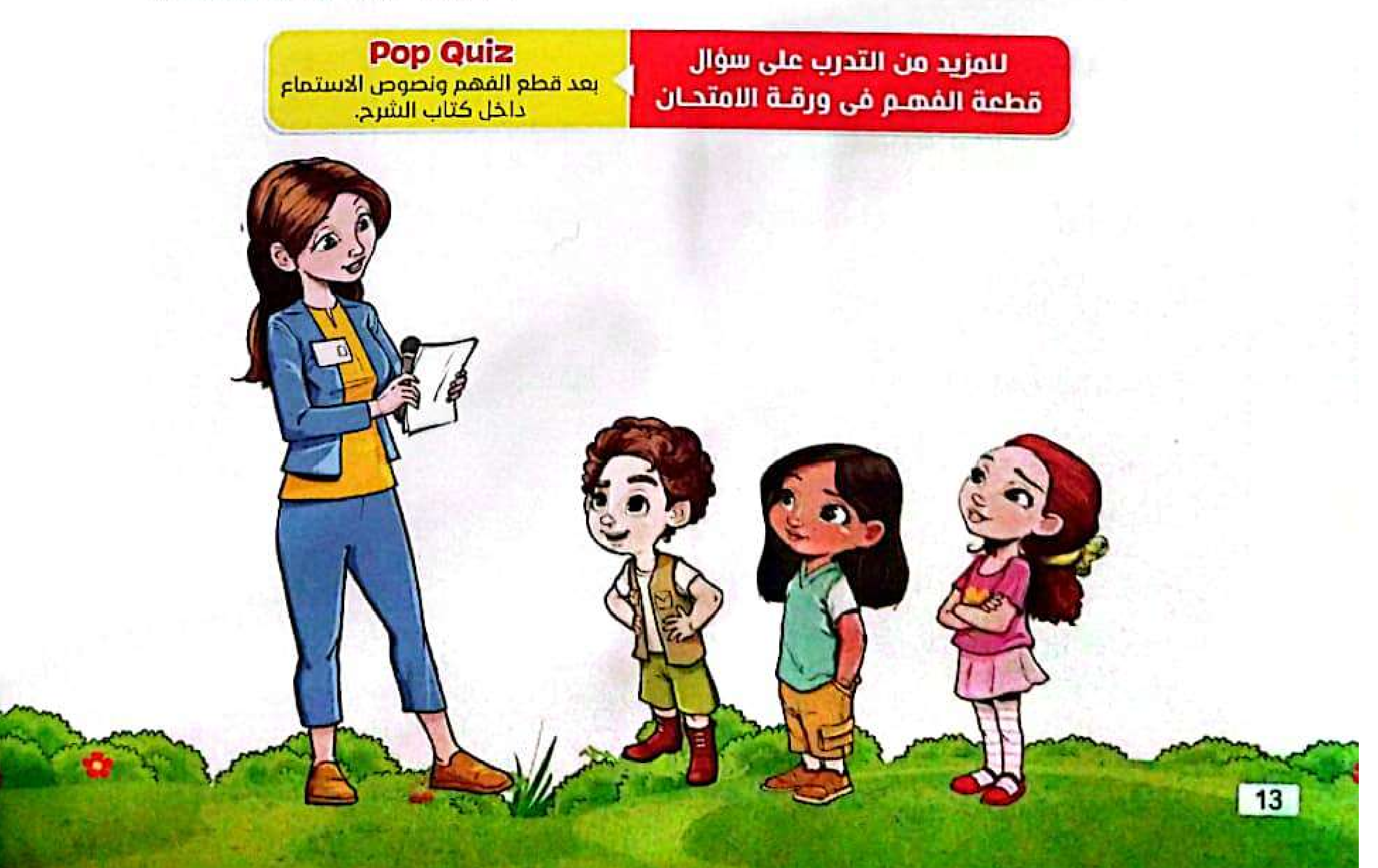
B • What will happen if we answer a video call from someone we don't know?

* We won't be safe online.

- Determine the central message, lesson, or moral.
وضح الرسالة / الدرس المستفاد ، أو المغزى من النص.

- Determine the central lesson of the text.

* How to stay safe online.



Contents

Theme 3 My society



Theme 4 I'm a responsible person



3

THEME

My society





Unit 7 All around the world
حول العالم

Aims of Unit Seven : الأهداف العامة للوحدة السابعة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

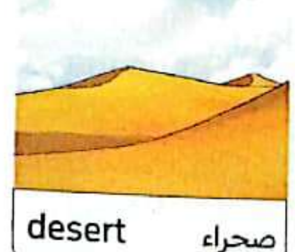
- understand environments around the world.
  - أفهم البيئات حول العالم.
- learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.
  - أتعرف على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
- form and use the present continuous.
  - أكون وأستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر.
- read about different energy sources.
  - أقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.
- understand the meaning of words in context.
  - أفهم معنى الكلمات في السياق.
- compare and order high numbers.
  - أقارن وأرتب الأعداد الكبيرة.
- talk about how to help the environment.
  - أتحدث عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة.
- make a competition entry to improve our environment.
  - أقوم بالتسجيل في مسابقة لتحسين بيئتنا.

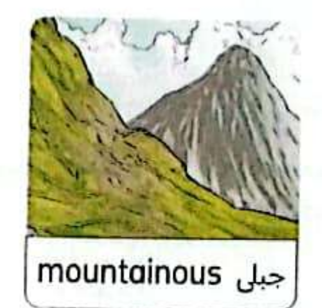
Lesson 1 ▸ Our world

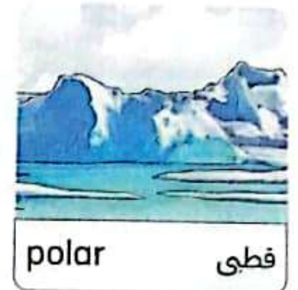
 Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary


coastal ساحلى


desert صحراء

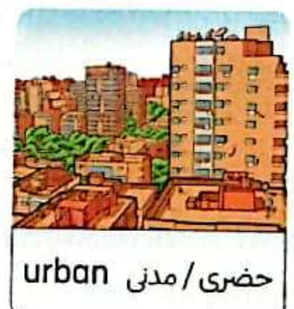

mountainous جبلى

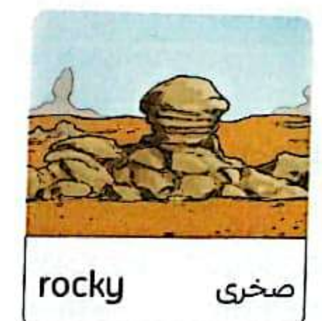

polar قطبى


rainforest غابة مطيرة



rural قروى / ريفى


urban حضرى / مدنى


rocky صخرى



densely populated كثافة سكانية عالية


sparsely populated كثافة سكانية منخفضة

• Adjectives

dry	جاف	noisy	صاخب / مزعج
quiet	هادئ	windy	عاصف
wet	رطب	metropolitan	حضرى / عاصمى

Did you know ?

- The Amazon covers 40% of South America and is the world's largest rainforest. The second largest is the Congo in Africa.

- تغطى منطقة الأمازون ٤٠٪ من مساحة أمريكا الجنوبية وهى أكبر غابة مطيرة فى العالم. ثانى أكبر غابة مطيرة هى الكونغو فى أفريقيا.

• Extra vocabulary

reptiles	زواحف	oxygen	غاز الأكسجين
temperature	درجة حرارة	mammals	ثدييات
buildings	مبانى	swamp	مستنقع
weather	طقس	Nile Delta	دلتا النيل
the Antarctic	القارة القطبية الجنوبية (القطب الجنوبي)	the Arctic	القطب الشمالي
		traffic	حركة المرور

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	find	يجد	found
change	يغير	changed	have / has	يملك/لديه	had
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	get	يحصل على	got
cover	يغطى	covered	make	يصنع	made
survive	يتعايش	survived			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

different kinds of	أنواع مختلفة من	on every continent	في كل قارة
travel around	يتجول	at the top of	على قمة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... is very hot and dry.
   a. sea   b. river   c. desert   d. lake
2. There are too many trees in the ....
   a. desert   b. sky   c. rainforest   d. island
3. It's a very high .... I can't climb it.
   a. street   b. mountain   c. park   d. sea
4. The weather in the .... is too cold.
   a. desert   b. Arctic   c. forest   d. beach

II Listening and Reading



 **Look and read.** انظر و اقرأ.

Rainforest



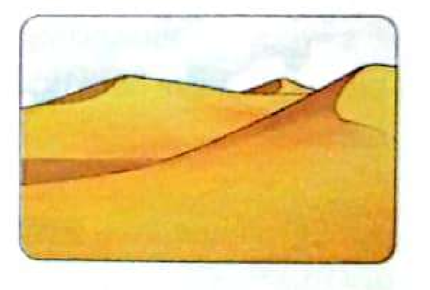
There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers here. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

Coastal environment



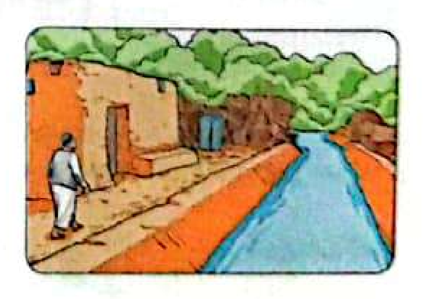
This environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

Desert environment



It is very dry in this environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

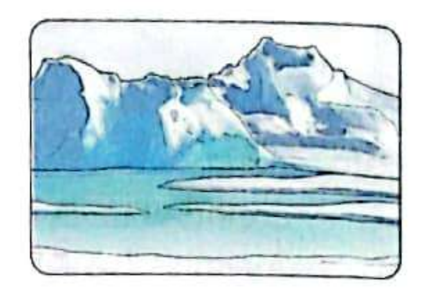
Rural environment



There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live in.

- الغابات المطيرة : يوجد الكثير من الأشجار والنباتات والزهور هنا. يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في هذه الأماكن. على سبيل المثال، هناك حشرات وطيور وزواحف وثدييات. غالبًا ما تمطر وتكون درجة الحرارة عالية.
- البيئة الساحلية : هذه البيئة هي المكان الذي تكون فيه الأرض بجوار البحر. في بعض الأماكن توجد شواطئ ذات رمال وأحيانًا توجد مستنقعات وغابات. دلتا النيل هي مثال على ذلك وكذلك البحر الأحمر.
- البيئة الصحراوية : الطقس جاف جدًا في هذه البيئة. يجب على الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش هنا إيجاد طرق ذكية للبقاء على قيد الحياة دون الكثير من الماء. يمكنك العثور على هذه البيئات في كل قارة، ويمكن أن تكون حارة أو باردة.
- البيئة الريفية : لا يوجد العديد من المنازل أو المباني هنا، لذلك غالبًا ما يحتوي هذا المكان على المزيد من الحيوانات والنباتات. لا يعيش الكثير من الناس هنا، لذلك فهي ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة. يمكن أن يكون بها الكثير من أنواع الطقس المختلفة، لكنها مكان هادئ للعيش فيه.

Polar environments



There are two of these environments in the world : the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy here, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live here, but there aren't any trees or flowers.

Urban environment



This is a metropolitan area which is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

Mountainous environment



It can be **difficult** for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to **survive**.

Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معاني الكلمات.

Learn 1. The word "**difficult**" in the text means..................

a. easy b. hard c. tall d. fast

Practice 2. The word "**survive**" in the text means to..................

a. die b. cut c. travel d. live

- البيئة القطبية : هناك نوعان من البيئات القطبية في العالم : القطب الشمالي والقطب الجنوبي. الجو بارد وعاصف هنا، مع الكثير من الجليد. وجدت بعض الحيوانات طرقًا للعيش هنا، لكن لا توجد أي أشجار أو أزهار.
- البيئة الحضرية : منطقة حضرية ذات كثافة سكانية عالية. يعيش معظم الناس في العالم في هذا النوع من البيئة. هناك الكثير من المباني، ويمكن أن يكون هناك الكثير من حركة المرور أيضًا.
- البيئة الجبلية : قد يكون من الصعب على الناس العيش والسفر في البيئة الجبلية المرتفعة. إنها أماكن جميلة جدًا، لكنها يمكن أن تكون باردة، مع هطول الكثير من الأمطار أو الثلوج، ويمكن أن يتغير الطقس بسرعة. يتعين على الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش هنا، ايجاد طرق خاصة للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

Did you know ?

- It is harder to get enough oxygen when you breathe at the top of a high mountain. If you aren't used to being in the mountains, it can make you sick!

- يصعب الحصول على ما يكفي من الأكسجين عندما تتنفس على قمة جبل عالٍ. إذا لم تكن معتادًا على التواجد في الجبال، فقد يجعلك ذلك مريضًا!

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It can be difficult for people to live and travel in a .... environment.
   a. polar b. mountainous c. rainforest d. desert
2. There are very beautiful .... in the mountainous environment.
   a. places b. trees c. birds d. flowers
3. The .... can change quickly in the mountainous environment.
   a. dam b. electricity c. weather d. street
4. The animals that live there have to find special ways to ....
   a. run b. snow c. die d. survive

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places, there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

The desert environment is very dry. The animals and plants that live here have to find <u>**clever**</u> ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find desert environments in every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The best title of the text is " .... ".
   a. Different environments b. Human's body
   c. Healthy food d. Computer games
2. The underlined word "<u>**clever**</u>" means ....
   a. busy b. angry
   c. smart d. nervous
3. The weather in the desert environment is always ....
   a. wet or rainy b. hot or cold
   c. windy or snowy d. stormy or wet

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Why isn't surviving in the desert easy?
   ....
5. Which environment has beaches and swamps?
   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

sparsely – densely – buildings – quiet

I live in a rural environment. There aren't many houses or (1) .... here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is (2) .... populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a (3) .... place to live.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. in our – city – There – aren't – trees – many.

....

2. has – little - water - very - environment – Which ?

....

3. animals – Lots – live – of – in – rainforest – the.

....

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Environments around the world

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• rainforest • desert • rain • survive • temperature

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 2

▶ Language



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



air pollution تلوث الهواء



water pollution تلوث الماء



fuel وقود



emission انبعاثات

Extra vocabulary

carbon dioxide (CO_2)	غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون	climate change	تغير المناخ
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى	amazing	رائع / مدهش
dirty	ملوث / غير نظيف	food packets	عبوات الطعام
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	power	طاقة
heat	حرارة	lorries	شاحنات
factories	مصانع	volcanic eruption	انفجار بركانى
article	مقال	podcast	تدوين صوتى / نشرة صوتية
gas	غاز	forest fires	حرائق الغابات
recycled paper	ورق معاد تصنيعه	burn	يحرق / يحترق
Mount Everest	جبل أفريست	climbers	متسلقين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
cause	يسبب	caused
try	يحاول	tried
stop	يتوقف	stopped
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled
disappear	يختفى	disappeared

Irregular

Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove
throw	يرمى	threw
wear	يرتدى	wore
put	يضع	put

Did you know ?

- A plastic bottle can be in the sea for over 400 years before it disappears. It's important to recycle plastic, not throw it away!

- يمكن أن تظل الزجاجة البلاستيكية فى البحر لأكثر من ٤٠٠ عام قبل أن تختفى. من المهم إعادة تدوير البلاستيك، وليس التخلص منه !

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

over a long period of time	على مدى طويل من الزمن
because of	بسبب
known as	معروف بـ
go into	يذهب إلى الداخل
pick up	يلتقط / يجمع
in the air	في الهواء
to make heat	لتوليد الحرارة
full of	ملئ بـ

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Pollution	Air pollution	Water pollution
Causes	emissions forest fires volcanic eruptions chemicals	plastic bottles chemicals

 Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

Word	Definition
climate change	when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time عندما يتغير الطقس ودرجة الحرارة على مدى فترة طويلة من الزمن
carbon dioxide	a gas in the atmosphere known as CO_2. It can be dangerous when there is too much in the air غاز في الغلاف الجوي يعرف باسم غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون. يمكن أن يكون خطيرًا عندما يكون هناك الكثير منه في الهواء
air pollution	when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick عندما يكون الهواء ملوث، يمكن أن يصيب الناس أو الحيوانات بالمرض
water pollution	when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic عندما تكون المياه ملوثة بسبب المواد الكيميائية أو البلاستيك
fuel	this is something we burn to make heat or power هذا شئ نحرقه لتوليد الحرارة أو الطاقة
emissions	these are made, for example, by factories, cars and lorries; they can cause air pollution يتم إنتاجها على سبيل المثال، بواسطة المصانع والسيارات والشاحنات؛ يمكن أن تسبب تلوث الهواء
coal	This is a fuel. We burn this to make heat أنه وقود. نقوم بحرقه لتوليد الحرارة

II Listening and Reading



Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.



Woman 1: Hello, and welcome to our Clean World podcast! We live in an **amazing**[1] world, but the things that people do can **damage**[2] the environment. Today we're talking about pollution – what is it, and what are we doing to stop it?

السيدة (١) : أهلاً ومرحبًا بكم فى النشرة الصوتية عن "عالمنا النظيف" ! نحن نعيش فى عالم مذهل لكن الأشياء التى يفعلها الناس بإمكانها أن تدمر البيئة. سنتحدث اليوم عن التلوث - ما هو ، وماذا سنفعل لإيقافه ؟

Woman 2: There are two main types of pollution – air pollution and water pollution. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in **factories**[3]. When we burn fuels, it makes carbon dioxide **emissions**[4]. Over a long time, this can lead to climate change, because there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Things in the natural world, such as forest fires, or **volcanic eruptions**[5], can also cause air pollution. Chemicals from factories or farms go into rivers or the sea to cause water pollution. There is also a problem with plastic pollution – there's a lot of plastic garbage in rivers and **oceans**[6], and this is very bad for the animals that live there.

[1] رائع
[2] يتلف / يدمر
[3] مصانع
[4] انبعاثات
[5] ثورات بركانية
[6] محيطات

السيدة (٢) : هناك نوعان أساسيين من التلوث - تلوث الهواء وتلوث الماء. يحدث تلوث الهواء بسبب الأشياء التى يفعلها الناس، مثل قيادة السيارات والشاحنات أو صناعة الأشياء فى المصانع. عندما نحرق الوقود، يُصدر انبعاثات ثانى أكسيد الكربون. وعلى المدى الطويل يمكن أن يقود هذا لتغير المناخ لأنه يوجد الكثير من ثانى أكسيد الكربون فى الغلاف الجوى. أشياء فى العالم الطبيعى مثل حرائق الغابات أو الثورات البركانية يمكنها أيضًا أن تسبب تلوث الهواء. الكيماويات الصادرة من المصانع أو المزارع التى تصل إلى الأنهار أو البحر يمكنها أن تسبب تلوث المياه. هناك أيضًا مشكلة التلوث الناتج عن البلاستيك - فهناك الكثير من القمامة البلاستيكية فى الأنهار والمحيطات وهذا سيئ جدًا للحيوانات التى تعيش هناك.

Woman 1 : Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to **reduce**[7] it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation **instead of**[8] using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a cleaner place!

[7] يقلل
[8] بدلًا من

السيدة (١) : اليوم عرفنا عن التلوث أكثر من ذى قبل وعرفنا مدى أهمية تقليله. يقوم العلماء باكتشاف طرق جديدة للتنقل واستخدام الوقود. يمكننا أيضًا تغيير الأشياء التى نفعلها، على سبيل المثال، يمكننا المشى أو قيادة الدراجة أو استخدام المواصلات العامة بدلًا من استخدام السيارات. نحتاج أيضًا التفكير عن كيف بإمكاننا استخدام البلاستيك بشكل أقل. الكثير من الناس تحاول أن تجعل عالمنا مكانًا أكثر نظافة !

Make logical inferences.
ضع استنتاجات منطقية.

Learn 1. What happens when we burn fossil fuels ?
- It makes carbon dioxide emissions.

Practice 2. What can we do to reduce pollution ? Mention one.
....



Look and read.


انظر واقرأ.

These people are helping to stop pollution[1]. They are on a beach and they are picking up garbage[2]. The garbage can be dirty[3], so they are wearing gloves. They are putting the plastic[4] in bags so it doesn't go into the sea.



هؤلاء الأشخاص يساعدون فى الحد من التلوث. إنهم على الشاطئ ويجمعون القمامة، يمكن أن تكون القمامة ملوثة، لذلك هم يرتدون القفازات. إنهم يضعون البلاستيك فى أكياس حتى لا تصل إلى البحر.

[1] تلوث
[2] قمامة/مهملات
[3] ملوث / متسخ
[4] بلاستيك

III Language Focus

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation :

A. Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I		→ am ['m]		
He / She / It	a singular noun	→ is ['s]	+ inf. + ing	
You / We / They	a plural noun	→ are ['re]		



She is sending an email to her friend.

B. Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I		→ am not ['m not]	
He / She / It	a singular noun	→ is not [isn't]	+ inf. + ing
You / We / They	a plural noun	→ are not [aren't]	





They aren't having lunch. They're watching TV.

C. Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

[A] Yes/No Question : [أ] السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am / Is / Are + subj. فاعل + inf. + ing ....?







Are they playing football ?

No, they aren't.



ex.: Is she studying for her exams?

- Yes, she is.

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بأداة الاستفهام :



Question word + **am / is / are** + subj. فاعل + (inf. + ing) ... ?



▸ What are you doing, Sara ?
- I'm riding my bike.

ملاحظات على : إضافة (ing) للفعل

◀ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

practice ⟶ practicing   cycle ⟶ cycling

◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)

sit ⟶ sitting   swim ⟶ swimming

◀ لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

wait ⟶ waiting   feed ⟶ feeding

◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

die ⟶ dying   lie ⟶ lying

Usage :

★ يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام) :

★ كلمات دالة (Key words) غالبًا تأتي مع الزمن :

now الآن	Take care! احذر!	at the moment في تلك اللحظة
Look! انظر!	still مازال	at present في الوقت الحاضر
Listen! انصت!	Look out! / Watch out!	احترس!

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.
- He is working now.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... your mom cooking lunch ?
   a. Does b. Are c. Is d. Did
2. They aren't .... to the party.
   a. came b. comes c. coming d. to come
3. Look! Youssef is .... the ball.
   a. kicking b. kicks c. kick d. kicked
4. My friend and I .... chess now.
   a. are playing b. am playing c. played d. plays
5. They .... writing a new story at the moment.
   a. is b. isn't c. are d. have
6. Sara is .... to school today.
   a. walk b. walked c. walking d. walks
7. What .... you doing ?
   a. was b. are c. is d. am
8. I am .... my dinner right now.
   a. eating b. ate c. eats d. eat
9. I'm .... Shaimaa at the moment.
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
10. Is he wearing jeans ? - No, ... isn't.
    a. you b. we c. they d. he

2 Read and complete with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية.

1. The baby .... [sleep] at the moment.
2. I am .... [send] you a photo.
3. Is Nader .... [do] his homework at the moment ?
4. Are your parents .... [work] at the moment ?
5. I .... [be] looking for a present for my mom now.
6. They are .... [watch] a movie at the cinema.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• **1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... they coming over for dinner ?
   a. Is b. Am c. Are d. Has
2. Mayar .... not sleeping on her sofa.
   a. is b. are c. am d. do
3. My brother is .... Chinese.
   a. learned b. learns c. learn d. learning
4. They are .... a new shopping mall in downtown.
   a. opening b. opened c. open d. opens
5. He .... to the new boy in his class at the moment.
   a. speaks b. is speaking c. has spoken d. spoke

• **2** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. up – are – garbage – They – picking – the.

   ....

2. you – pollution – are – doing – to stop – What ?

   ....

3. brother – Why – is – your – crying ?

   ....

• **3** Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

gloves – picking – stop – bags

Sara : What are you doing to stop pollution ?
Rahma : We are (1) .... up garbage.
Sara : How can you protect yourselves ?
Rahma : By wearing (2) ....
Sara : Where can you put plastic ?
Rahma : We can put plastic in (3) ....
Sara : Why ?
Rahma : To stop plastic from going into the sea again.

• 4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are two main types of pollution - air pollution and water pollution. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in factories. When we burn fuels, it makes carbon dioxide emissions. Over a long time, this can lead to climate change, because there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Things in the natural world, such as forest fires, or volcanic eruptions, can also **cause** air pollution. Chemicals from factories or farms go into rivers or the sea to cause water pollution. There is also a problem with plastic pollution – there's a lot of plastic garbage in rivers and oceans, and this is very bad for the animals that live there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word " **cause**" is the same meaning as "........................ to" .
   a. eat b. grow c. lead d. stop
2. The general idea of the text is about " .... ".
   a. Different environments b. Mountains
   c. Types of pollution d. Nile Delta
3. Cars and trucks cause .... pollution.
   a. water b. noise c. air d. soil

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What are the causes of air pollution ?

....

5. How can chemicals from factories affect water ?

....

• 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Air pollution

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• caused by • emissions • factories • climate change

....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 3

Energy around us



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


solar energy
طاقة شمسية


wind energy
طاقة الرياح


tidal energy
طاقة المد والجزر


oil بترول خام


fossil fuels
وقود حفري

tide	المد والجزر	renewable	متجدد
geothermal energy	الطاقة الحرارية الأرضية	generate energy	يولد طاقة
non-renewable	غير متجدد	wind turbines	محركات الرياح

Extra vocabulary

kind	نوع	natural resources	موارد طبيعية
remains	بقايا	electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية
electricity	كهرباء	future	مستقبل
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	movement	حركة
power	قوة/طاقة	machine	آلة
moving water	المياه الجارية	shine	يلمع / يشرق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
release	يصدر / يطلق	released
generate	يولد	generated
store	يخزن	stored

Irregular

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
blow	يهب	blew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the long run	على المدى الطويل	run out	ينفذ
such as	مثل	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
a period of time	فترة من الوقت	get more of	يحصل على المزيد من
go up and down	صعودًا وهبوطًا	throughout the day	على مدار اليوم
released into	يتم إطلاقه في		

Study these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

Word	Definition
turbine	a machine that makes energy آلة لتوليد الطاقة
to generate	to make energy أن تولد طاقة
to store	to keep something for a period of time أن تحافظ على شئ ما فترة من الوقت
tide	when the level of the sea gets higher or lower عندما يرتفع أو ينخفض مستوى البحر



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... is a machine that makes energy.
   a. car b. pollution c. turbine d. sun
2. To .... something means to keep it for a period of time.
   a. cut b. damage c. store d. see
3. When the level of the sea gets higher or lower , there's a ....
   a. tide b. fish c. boat d. ship
4. This turbine .... electricity.
   a. asks b. sends c. comes d. generates
5. The sun, the wind and the air are natural ....
   a. resources b. games c. subjects d. objects

• Help your child read and identify the definitions of each word. • ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة.



II Listening and Reading

 **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Energy around us

Fossil fuels[1] are things like coal, gas, and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are **non-renewable**[2] : when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is **released**[3] into the atmosphere. There are other kinds of energy we can use which are **renewable**[4]: they don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make **pollution**[5], and **on the long run**[6], they are better.

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get **solar energy**[7] from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of **wind turbines**[8] in the sea, close to the coast. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use **tidal energy**[9] from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. You can **store**[10] this energy, so if the sun isn't shining or the wind isn't blowing, we will still have electricity! In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for **geothermal energy**[11], as the ground can heat water.

[1] وقود حفري
[2] غير متجدد
[3] يتم اطلاقه
[4] متجدد
[5] تلوث
[6] على المدى البعيد
[7] طاقة شمسية
[8] توربينات الرياح
[9] طاقة المد والجزر
[10] يخزن
[11] الطاقة الحرارية الأرضية



In the future, we need to get more of our energy from renewable sources, and less from non-renewable sources.

- الوقود الحفرى هو أشياء مثل الفحم والغاز والنفط. يتم حرقها في المصانع أو استخدامها لتدفئة المنازل والمبانى. ومع ذلك، فهى غير قابلة للتجديد : عندما تنفذ، لا يمكننا العثور عليها أو صنع المزيد منها. يتكون الوقود الحفرى من بقايا النباتات والحيوانات القديمة جدا التى عاشت على الأرض منذ زمن طويل. عندما نحرقها، يتم إطلاق الكثير من ثانى أكسيد الكربون فى الغلاف الجوى.
- هناك أنواع أخرى من الطاقة التى يمكننا استخدامها وهى قابلة للتجديد : فهى لا تنفذ. يمكننا الحصول على الطاقة المتجددة من الموارد الطبيعية مثل الرياح والشمس والماء والحرارة داخل الأرض. هذه الأنواع من الطاقة لا تسبب التلوث، وهى أفضل على المدى الطويل.
- هناك أنواع عديدة من البيئات على الأرض، ويمكننا استخدام موارد طبيعية مختلفة فى أماكن مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، تعد الصحراء الحارة مكانًا جيدًا للحصول على الطاقة الشمسية من الشمس. ويوجد مزارع كبيرة مزودة بالكثير من الألواح الشمسية التى بإمكانها إنتاج كهرباء نظيفة. يمكن أن تتعرض البيئة الساحلية للكثير من الرياح، لذلك يوجد الكثير من توربينات الرياح فى البحر بالقرب من الساحل. فى بعض الأماكن، يرتفع البحر وينخفض طوال اليوم. هذا ما يسمى بالمد والجزر. فى الأماكن التى يكون فيها المد والجزر كبيرا جدًا وقويًا، يمكننا أستخدام طاقة المد والجزر من المياه المتحركة لتوليد الكهرباء. تعمل توربينات الرياح والأمواج بالحركة. تعمل الرياح أو الماء على تحريك التوربينات، وتولد هذه الطاقة المتحركة طاقة كهربائية، يمكنك تخزين هذه الطاقة، لذلك إذا لم تكن الشمس مشرقة أو لم تهب الرياح، فستظل لدينا الكهرباء! فى أماكن أخرى، يكون الجو حارًا جدًا تحت الأرض، هذه أماكن جيدة للطاقة الحرارية الأرضية، حيث يمكن للأرض تسخين المياه. فى المستقبل، نحتاج إلى الحصول على المزيد من طاقتنا من مصادر متجددة، وأقل من مصادر غير متجددة.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What are fossil fuels made from ?
- Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals.

Practice 2. Why are fossil fuels non-renewable energy ?
....

Understanding the meaning of words from context
فهم معانى الكلمات من سياق النص

1. Sometimes when we read a text, we find words which we don't understand.
١. أحيانًا عندما نقرأ نصًا فإننا نجد كلمات لا نفهمها.
2. Look at the rest of the words in the sentence carefully. Can they help you understand the new word ?
٢. انظر إلى باقى الكلمات فى الجملة بعناية. هل تساعدك فى فهم الكلمة الجديدة ؟
3. Look at how a new word is used in a sentence and decide if it is a verb or a noun.
٣. انظر إلى كيفية استخدام الكلمة الجديدة فى جملة وحدد ما إذا كانت فعلًا أو اسمًا.
4. This helps you guess the meaning of new words.
٤. هذا سيساعدك على تخمين معنى الكلمات الجديدة.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A hot desert is a good place to get .... energy.
   a. geothermal b. tidal c. wind d. solar
2. A .... environment can get a lot of wind.
   a. desert b. forest c. coastal d. polar
3. When the sea goes up and down throughout the day, this is called a ....
   a. tide b. turbine c. fuel d. round
4. Wind and wave turbines work by ....
   a. movement b. panels c. plants d. farming

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

pollution – solar energy – resources – climate change

Burning fuels isn't safe. When we burn non-renewable fuels like coal, gas, and oil, carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. This causes air (1) .... and makes climate change worse. Renewable energy from natural (2) .... is better for the environment and it doesn't run out. Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they can make electricity using the movement of the sea. We can get (3) .... from the sun.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable : when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

When we burn fuels, it makes carbon dioxide emissions and this causes air pollution. It's very **dangerous** for health. We should use fossil fuels less to reduce pollution.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is about "........................".
   a. Solar energy b. Water pollution
   c. Fossil fuels d. Oxygen
2. The underlined word "**dangerous**" means ....
   a. bad b. good c. useful d. nice
3. When we burn the fossil fuels, a lot of carbon dioxide is ....
   a. kept b. protected c. released d. stopped

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Give examples of fossil fuels from the text.

....

5. What are fossil fuels made from ?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. energy – the – Solar – from – comes - sun.

....

2. a machine – makes – that – A turbine – energy – is.

....

3. fuels – Burning – isn't – fossil – safe.

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Coal and oil are non-renewable. They run ....
   a. in b. on c. out d. by
2. This machine .... making energy.
   a. is b. were c. are d. have
3. Is he sleeping .... ?
   a. now b. last week c. yesterday d. every day
4. What are they .... to stop air pollution ?
   a. doing b. do c. does d. did
5. I'm .... a book about energy.
   a. reads b. reading c. read d. to read

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Soha to tell her about kinds of energy. Your name is Nader and your email address is nader@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is soha@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • renewable • run out • fuels • non-renewable • pollution

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....



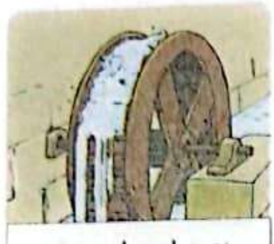

Lesson 4

▶ Writing : How to write a report



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary


waterwheel ساقية


volcano بركان


High Dam السد العالي


reservoir خزان


flooding فيضان / طوفان


steam بخار


hole فتحة / ثقب


tunnel نفق

hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	subtitle	عنوان فرعي	location	موقع
features	مميزات / سمات	report	تقرير	facts	حقائق

• Extra vocabulary

country	دولة	spring	ينبوع
heat	حرارة	underground	تحت الأرض
kilowatt	كيلووات	Iceland	دولة أيسلندا
machine	آلة	hydropower	الطاقة الكهرومائية
farming	الزراعة	Greek	يوناني / أغريقي
generator	مولد كهربائي	mechanical energy	الطاقة الميكانيكية
falling water	ماء متساقط	used to	اعتاد أن
mean	يعني / يقصد	title	عنوان

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
turn	يحول / يدور	turned
change	يتغير	changed

Irregular

Present		Past
come up	يصعد	came up

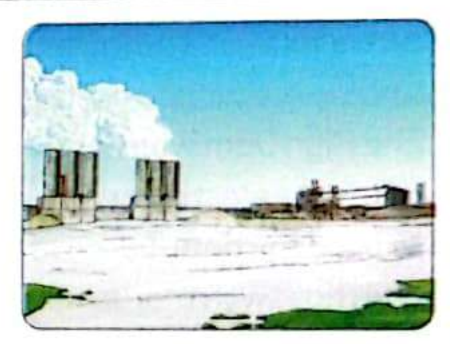
Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
location	a particular place or position مكان أو موضع محدد
kilowatt	a unit for measuring electrical power وحدة لقياس الطاقة الكهربية
waterwheel	a large wheel moved by moving water, used to make a machine work عجلة كبيرة تتحرك بواسطة حركة المياه الجارية وتستخدم لجعل آله تعمل

II Listening and Reading

 Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Report : Geothermal energy, Iceland



Why Iceland ?

Iceland is a cold **country** [1], but it has more than 600 hot **springs** [2] and 200 **volcanoes** [3]. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make **electricity** [4].

How does it work ?

When water gets hot, it makes **steam** [5]. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves **turbines** [6] to make electricity.

(1) دولة
(2) ينابيع
(3) براكين
(4) كهرباء
(5) بخار
(6) توربينات

Why is it important ?

100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

- لماذا أيسلندا ؟ أيسلندا بلدة باردة الطقس ، لكن بها أكثر من ٦٠٠ ينبوع ساخن و ٢٠٠ بركان، يوجد الكثير من المياه الساخنة تحت الأرض، وتستخدم لتدفئة المنازل وتوليد الكهرباء.

- كيف يعمل ؟ عندما يسخن الماء ، ينتج عنه البخار، يمكن للمهندسين في أيسلندا عمل ثقوب تصل للمياه الساخنة تحت الأرض، ثم يتصاعد البخار، ويقوم بتحريك التوربينات لتوليد الكهرباء.

- لماذا هو مهم ؟ ١٠٠٪ من الكهرباء المنتجة منه والحرارة تأتي من مصادر متجددة.

Facts and figures :

- The population of Iceland's capital city Reykjavik is 123,000.
- Iceland is an island in the Atlantic Ocean near the Arctic region.

 **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

Hydroelectricity

People have used **hydroelectricity**[1] (also called hydropower) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move **machines**[2] or generate electricity. The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn **waterwheels**[3]. The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

Now, we can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity. A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to <u>turn</u> a turbine. The mechanical energy of the moving turbine is changed to electrical energy by a generator.

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to <u>generate electricity</u>. The **location**[4] of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion **kilowatt**[5] hours of electricity a year!

[1] طاقة كهرومائية
[2] آلات
[3] سواقي
[4] موقع
[5] كيلو وات

- لقد استخدم الناس الطاقة الكهرومائية (وتسمى أيضا الطاقة المائية) لفترة طويلة جدًا. تعنى الطاقة الكهرومائية استخدام الطاقة من المياه الجارية لتحريك الآلات أو توليد الكهرباء. استخدم القدماء المصريين والإغريق الطاقة من المياه الجارية لتشغيل سواقي الماء، يمكن لسواقي المياه أن تحرك الآلات وساعدت هذه الآلات في كلًا من الزراعة وصنع الطعام. الآن، يمكننا استخدام الطاقة الكهرومائية لتوليد الكهرباء. يستخدم السد الكهرومائي الطاقة من المياه المتساقطة لتشغيل التوربين. تتحول الطاقة الميكانيكية للتوربين المتحرك إلى طاقة كهربائية بواسطة مولد. تم الانتهاء من بناء السد العالي عام ١٩٧١ . ويستخدم مياه نهر النيل لتوليد الكهرباء. جعل موقع أسوان هذا مكانًا جيدًا لبناء السد، لأنه يمكن أن يمنع نهر النيل من الفيضان. يحتوى السد على اثنى عشر توربينًا كبيرًا بداخله. يولد أكثر من ١٠ مليارات كيلو وات / ساعة من الكهرباء سنويًا !

Determine the meaning of words in a text.
حدد معانى الكلمات فى النص.

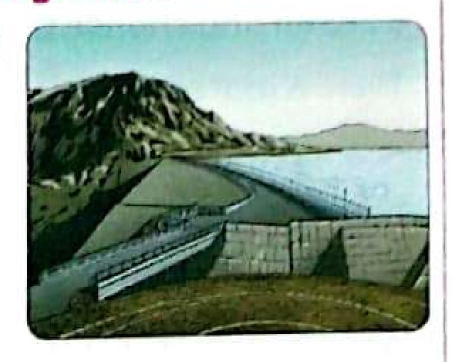
Learn 1. The underlined word "<u>turn</u>" means to ....
a. cut b. stop c. move d. break

Practice 2. The underlined phrase "<u>generate electricity</u>" means .... electricity.
a. use b. run out c. make d. see



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Kárahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant



Kárahnjúkar is a hydroelectricity plant in eastern Iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 kilometers of underground water tunnels. Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The Kárahnjúkar Dam is the largest of the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690,000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant.

مصنع كاراهنجوكار للطاقة الكهرومائية

يعتبر كاراهنجوكار هو محطة للطاقة الكهرومائية في شرق أيسلندا. فهو أكبر محطة للطاقة في أيسلندا. استغرق بناءه حوالي خمس سنوات من عام ٢٠٠٣ إلى ٢٠٠٧. تم بناء خمس سدود في منتصف النهرين. وعليه تم بناء ثلاثة خزانات ضخمة من الماء. تنتقل المياه من الخزانات عبر أنفاق مائية طولها ٧٣ كيلومتر. وبعد ذلك تنتقل إلى نفق عميق إلى محطة طاقة تحت الأرض. يعتبر سد كاراهنجوكار من أضخم خمسة سدود حول العالم. حيث يبلغ ارتفاعه ١٩٣ متر وطوله ٧٣٠ متر. إنه ينتج أكثر من ٦٩٠،٠٠٠ كيلووات من الطاقة سنويًا. لا يتم استخدام الطاقة للتدفئة في المنازل ولكنها تستخدم للتعدين الصناعي.

III Writing skill

Features in the report الخصائص الواردة في تقرير

A report is a way to give information about a topic. It often has these features:

التقرير هو وسيلة لإعطاء معلومات حول موضوع ما. غالبًا ما تحتوي على هذه الميزات :

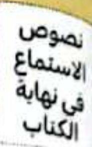
1. **A title :** this tells you what the report is about.
   عنوان : يخبرك هذا عن موضوع التقرير.

2. **Photos :** these illustrate the report and make it look interesting. A photo can help explain what you mean.
   الصور الفوتوغرافية : توضح الصور التقرير وتجعله يبدو ممتعًا. تساعد الصورة في شرح ما تعنيه.

3. **Subtitles :** these break down the information into smaller sections by topic.
   العناوين الفرعية : هذه تقسم المعلومات إلى أقسام أصغر حسب الموضوع.

4. **Facts and figures :** a report uses these to show that information is true.
   حقائق وأرقام : يستخدمها التقرير لإثبات صحة المعلومات.

General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There is a lot of .... water underground in Iceland.
   a. snow b. ice c. cold d. hot
2. Hot water is used to heat homes and to make ....
   a. food b. electricity c. steam d. ice
3. When water gets hot, it makes ....
   a. steam b. gas c. ice d. snow
4. The steam comes up and it moves .... to make electricity.
   a. water b. panels c. tires d. turbines

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

kilowatts – generate – flooding – planting

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to (1).................... electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from (2).................... . The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion (3).................... hours of electricity a year.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is – cold – Iceland – a – country.

   ....

2. turns – The falling – turbine – water – the.

   ....

3. Dam – High – The – finished – was – in 1971.

   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

People have used hydroelectricity (also called hydropower) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. The **Ancient** Egyptians and Greeks used the

energy in moving water to turn waterwheels. The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hydroelectricity is energy we get from moving ....

   a. sun b. wind c. moon d. water

2. The underlined word "**Ancient**" means very ....

   a. new b. hot c. old d. angry

3. The machines helped with .... and making food.

   a. farming b. traveling c. speaking d. drawing

B. Answer the following questions :

4. How did the Ancient Egyptians and Greeks turn waterwheels ?

....

5. What's the main idea of the text ?

....

• 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Hydroelectricity

Guiding elements :

• clean • generate • dam • turbine • energy

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 5&6

- CLIL : Math : comparing and ordering high number
- Project



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

article	مقال	tonnes	أطنان
green spaces	مساحات خضراء	average	المتوسط

• Extra vocabulary

project	مشروع	traffic	حركة المرور	prize	جائزة
public parks	حدائق عامة	garden	حديقة (خاصة)	cleaner	أكثر نظافة
home	موطن	planet	كوكب		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
absorb	يمتص	absorbed	know	يعرف	knew
cause	يسبب	caused	beat	ينبض	beat
waste	يهدر	wasted			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find out	يكتشف	important in (inf. + ing)	مهم في
take .... out	يزيل - يخرج	create pollution	يسبب تلوث



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I like to plant flowers in my ....
   a. garden b. traffic c. planet d. prize
2. My brother won a nice .... in the competition.
   a. park b. project c. prize d. article
3. There's too much .... in the street. - It's very busy.
   a. water b. rain c. air d. traffic

II Listening and Reading

★ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

"Listen to this, Mom," said Nessma one day after school. "This **article**[1] says that in 2019, Egypt started a project to plant one million trees in **public parks**[2] and gardens all over the country. That's amazing!"

"You're right," said Mom. "Do you understand why it's important to plant trees?"

[1] مقال
[2] حدائق عامة
[3] يمتص
[4] أطنان

Nessma wasn't sure. "They look really nice, don't they? They give us fruit, and they can be homes for animals."

"All those things are true, but trees are even more special than that" said Mom. "Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide emissions. This causes air pollution and climate change.

But forests can **absorb**[3] carbon dioxide. That means they take it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 billion **tonnes**[4] of carbon dioxide every year?"

"Wow, that's a lot of carbon dioxide!" said Nessma. "So trees are really important in protecting our planet!"

قالت نسمة ذات يوم بعد المدرسة : "استمعى إلى هذا، يا أمى." يذكر هذا المقال أنه فى عام ٢٠١٩، بدأت مصر مشروعًا لزراعة مليون شجرة فى المتنزهات العامة والحدائق فى جميع أنحاء البلاد. هذا مذهل!" قالت أمى : "أنت على حق. هل تفهمين سبب أهمية زراعة الأشجار؟"

نسمة لم تكن متأكدة. "إنها تبدو جميلة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟ يعطوننا الفاكهة، ويمكن أن يكونوا منازل للحيوانات. قالت أمى : "كل هذه الأشياء صحيحة، لكن الأشجار مميزة أكثر من ذلك." "من الأشياء التى ينتجها الناس هى انبعاثات ثانى أكسيد الكربون. وهذا يسبب تلوث الهواء وتغير المناخ. ولكن يمكن للغابات امتصاص ثانى أكسيد الكربون. هذا يعنى أنها تخرجها من الغلاف الجوى وتجعل الهواء أكثر نظافة! هل تعلمين أن الغابات تمتص حوالى ٢,٦ مليار طن من ثانى أكسيد الكربون كل عام؟" قالت نسمة : "واو، هذه نسبة كبيرة من ثانى أكسيد الكربون!" "لذا فالأشجار مهمة حقًا فى حماية كوكبنا!"

Audioscript

 **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ



So, the first question is : What can our country do to help the environment ? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy.

لذا : السؤال الأول هو : ماذا يمكن لبلدنا أن تفعل لتساعد البيئة ؟ إنه شيق. أعتقد أن بلدنا تستطيع المساعدة بواسطة استخدام الطاقة المتجددة أكثر.



I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

أنا أتفق معك. هذه طريقة جيدة تجعل استخدامنا للوقود الحفرى أقل. أنا أيضًا أعتقد أنها فكرة جيدة لزراعة الكثير من الأشجار وحماية الغابات التى لدينا.



Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.

نعم، أنتِ مُحقة. الغابات تساعد على حماية البيئة.



And what can I do to help the environment ? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drop garbage.

وماذا أيضًا يمكننا فعله لمساعدة البيئة ؟ حسنا، يمكننى إعادة استخدام البلاستك وعدم إلقاء القمامة.

Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity.

نعم، يجب علينا ألا نلقى القمامة، لكن أعتقد الشئ الأكثر أهمية أن نغلق الأنوار وعدم إهدار الكهرباء.

III Language Function

How to express your opinion كيفية التعبير عن رأيك

To express your opinion, you can use these phrases :

- I agree ... أوافق....
- I'm not sure. لست متأكد.
- I disagree. لا أوافق.
- You're right. أنت على حق.





Pop Quiz on Language Functions

• **Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.**

right – agree – think – disagree – not sure

Fatma : Hello Doaa. Would you like to go to the cinema this night ?

Doaa : I'm (1) .... I will do my math homework.

Fatma : Oh! I think also your mom will (2) ....

Doaa : Sure. Do you like having dinner with me ?

Fatma : OK. I (3) .... and we can do the homework together.

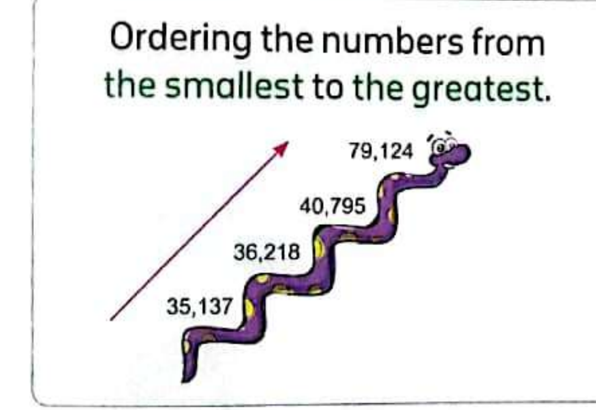
Doaa : Yes, you're (4) .... I will be happy.



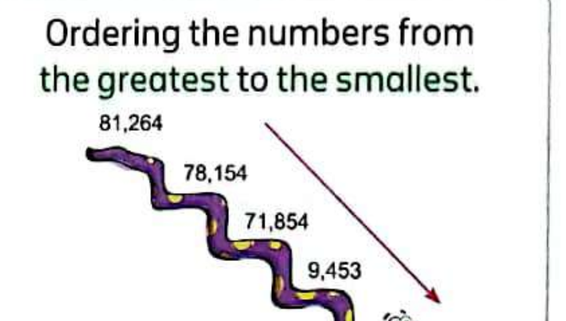
IV Math

Comparing and ordering high numbers.

Ordering the numbers from the smallest to the greatest.



Ordering the numbers from the greatest to the smallest.



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

1,000	one thousand
10,000	ten thousand
100,000	one hundred thousand
1,000,000	one million
10,000,000	ten million
1,000,000,000	one billion



Pop Quiz on Math

- Write the number. Then put the numbers in the correct order from the smallest to biggest.

a. ten thousand 10,000 ☐

b. one million ______ ☐

c. one hundred million ______ ☐

d. one thousand ______ 1

e. one billion ______ ☐

f. one hundred thousand ______ ☐

g. ten million ______ ☐



Read and learn.

اقرأ واتعلم.

1. The average human brain has about 100 billion brain cells.

متوسط ما يمتلكه المخ البشرى حوالى ١٠٠ مليار خلية دماغية.



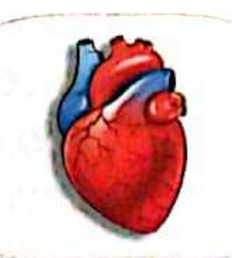
2. The average human has about 100,000 hairs on their head.

متوسط ما يمتلكه الإنسان حوالى ١٠٠,٠٠٠ شعرة على رأسه.



3. Your heart beats about 35 million times a year.

ينبض قلبك حوالى ٣٥ مليون مرة فى السنة.



General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.**

renewable - recycle - protect - plant

Gamila : Hello, Roqia. How are you ?

Roqia : Hello, Gamila. I'm fine.

Gamila : What can our country do to help the environment?

Roqia : That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more (1) .... energy.

Gamila : I agree. I also think it's a good idea to (2) .... more trees and protect the forests we have.

Roqia : Yes, you're right. Forests help to (3) .... the environment.

Gamila : What can I do to help the environment?

Roqia : You shouldn't drop garbage.

2 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. absorb - dioxide - Forests - carbon - can.

....

2. drop - shouldn't - We - garbage.

....

3. trees - Why - to plant - important - it - is ?

....

3 **Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.**

How we help our environment

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- renewable
- fossil fuels
- forests
- trees

....

....

....

....

....

....



UNIT 7

1 Reading comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمات، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخمن المعنى.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Urban environment is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too. In rural environment, there aren't many houses or buildings. It is **sparsely** populated. It is a **quiet** place to live in.

شرح الحل تقرأ الفقرة جيدًا لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستهدفة :

quiet هادئ   sparsely منخفضة الكثافة *

1. The underlined word "**sparsely**" means "..................".

a. many   b. little   c. a lot of   d. much

2. The underlined word "**quiet**" is the opposite of ....

a. calm   b. cold   c. noisy   d. hot

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. Fossil fuels are non-renewable : when they **run out** , we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from remains of very **old** plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, carbon dioxide is released into atmosphere.

1. The underlined phrase "**run out**" means" ....".

a. store   b. finish   c. stay   d. keep

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**old**" is ....

a. ancient   b. new   c. bad   d. late

Skills

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (السد العالى) و (التلوث) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
The High Dam	▶ Write the meaning : كهرباء .... سد .... يوقف .... توربينات .... يولد طاقة .... فيضان	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. The High Dam helps to .... flooding. 2. The dam has twelve large .... inside. 3. The dam uses water from the Nile to create .... 4. The High Dam .... more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "The High Dam" ....
Pollution	يساعد .... تلوث .... بلاستيك .... غير نظيف .... قمامة .... قفازات	1. Some people are helping to stop .... 2. They are picking up .... on the beach. 3. People use .... to keep their hands clean during collecting garbage. 4. There's a lot of .... in rivers and oceans.	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "Pollution" ....

Skills 3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Rainforest environment	trees	There are lots of trees, plants and flowers.
	animals-live	Lots of animals live there.
	reptiles	There are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals.
	temperature-hot	It often rains and the temperature is hot.
Renewable energy	run out	Renewable energy doesn't run out.
	natural	We can get renewable energy from natural resources.
	make – pollution	These kinds of energy don't make pollution.
	renewable	Wind, sun and water are renewable energies.
Hydroelectricity	hydropower	Hydroelectricity is called hydropower.
	generate	Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to generate electricity.
	dam-turbine	A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to turn a turbine.
How to help the environment	renewable-energy	Our country can help by using more renewable energy.
	less-fossil fuels	We should use less fossil fuels.
	plant – protect	Plant more trees and protect the forests we have.
	drop	We shouldn't drop garbage.
	recycle	We can recycle plastic.
Rural environment	house-buildings	There aren't many houses or buildings there.
	animals - plants	This place often has more animals and plants.
	weather	It can have lots of different kinds of weather.
	sparsely-populated	It is a sparsely populated area.
	quiet place	It is a quiet place to live in.





تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Urban and rural environment

Urban environment is densely populated.[1] Most people in the world live in this kind of environment.[2] There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.[3] In rural environment, there aren't many houses or buildings.[4] It is sparsely populated.[5] It's a quiet place to live in.[6]

2 Fossil fuels

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas, and oil.[7] These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm.[8] Fossil fuels are non-renewable.[9] When they run out, we can't find or make more of them.[10] Fossil fuels are made from remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago.[11] When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.[12]

3 The High Dam

The High Dam was finished in 1971.[13] It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity.[14] The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam.[15] The dam could stop the River Nile from flooding.[16] The dam has twelve large turbines inside.[17] It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year.[18]

4 Types of environments

To : essraa@gmail.com
From : aya@yahoo.com
Subject : Types of environments

Dear Essraa,

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places.[19] For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun.[20] A coastal environment can get a lot of wind.[21] We can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity.[22] Wind and wave turbines work by movement.[23] The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy.[24]

Yours,
Aya

Review on Unit 7



مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

rainforest	غابة مطيرة	waterwheel	ساقية
desert	صحراء	volcano	بركان
polar	قطبي	spring	ينبوع
garbage	قمامة	generate electricity	يولد كهرباء
traffic	مرور	factory	مصنع
High Dam	السد العالي		

Language

The Present Continuous Tense

Affirmative

Subj. الفاعل + am / is / are + inf. + ing باقي الجملة ....

▶ Tarek is listening to a podcast.

Negative

Subj. الفاعل + 'm not / isn't / aren't + inf. + ing باقي الجملة ....

▶ We aren't playing video games.

Interrogative

Wh-(words) + am / is / are + subj. الفاعل + inf. + ing باقي الجملة .... ?

▶ What are you doing, Nader? - I'm playing chess.

Am / Is / Are + subj. الفاعل + inf. + ing باقي الجملة .... ?

▶ Are they eating chocolate cake?

- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Test 1 on Unit 7



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There aren't many houses or buildings in .... environment.
   a. polar b. rural c. metropolitan d. densely
2. The rural environment is .... populated.
   a. sparsely b. densely c. friendly d. carefully
3. There isn't a lot of .... in the rural environment.
   a. traffic b. sand c. rock d. glass
4. The rural environment is a .... place to live in.
   a. bad b. crowded c. quiet d. noisy

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

buildings - sea - environment - swamps

Ali : Hello, Sami.
Sami : Hello, Ali. I want to ask you some questions.
Ali : Of course. Go ahead.
Sami : Which (1) .... has very little water ?
Ali : The desert. It is very dry.
Sami : Which environment has beaches, (2) .... and forests ?
Ali : The coastal environment. It is where the land is next to the (3) ....
Sami : Thank you, Ali.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Yesterday, I read an article about the problem of pollution. Pollution can cause many health problems and diseases. Scientists say that there are many reasons for pollution like factories and cars emissions, burning garbage or rice straws and also using fossil fuels. Pollution is a big problem for our country. Egypt tries to stop <u>it</u> by planting more trees. We also try to use renewable energy to make electricity. Egypt is building many wind and solar farms to get electricity. We should all help our country to stop pollution.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This text is mainly about ....
   a. trees b. plants c. pollution d. farming
2. We try to use renewable energy to make ....
   a. pollution b. electricity c. people d. garbage
3. Pollution causes many .... problems.
   a. work b. energy c. health d. reading

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What are the reasons for pollution ? Mention two.

....

5. What does Egypt do to stop pollution ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir lives in a big city. ☐
2. Amir could see the Nile from the roof. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir took the .... out of the washing machine.
   a. bird b. laundry c. plastic d. tablet
2. Amir helped his .... hang up the clothes.
   a. grandpa b. dad c. mom d. grandma

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We are .... our grandparents.
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
2. What are you .... to stop pollution ?
   a. doing b. do c. does d. did
3. Fossil fuels are non-renewable. They run ....
   a. in b. on c. out d. by
4. We .... watching the film at the moment.
   a. do b. have c. don't d. are
5. She .... making a nice cake for the birthday.
   a. are b. were c. does d. is

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. resources - Fossil fuels – non-renewable – are.

....

2. machine – How – work - does – the ?

....

3. chess – I'm – friend – with – playing – my.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Different environments

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : mountainous - rural - urban - densely

....

....

....



Test 2 on Unit 7

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fossil fuels are things like coal, ... and oil.
   a. gas b. water c. copper d. oxygen
2. Fossil fuels are burned in ....
   a. factories b. streets c. parks d. schools
3. Fossil fuels are used to make homes and buildings ....
   a. cold b. clean c. dirty d. warm
4. Fossil fuels are ....
   a. renewable b. non-renewable c. electric d. magic

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

[Giza-6th October 2023]

save - recycle - electricity - renewable

Ghada: Hello, Hager ! How are you ?
Hager : I'm fine, thank you.
Ghada: What can we do to help the environment ?
Hager : Well, we can (1) .... plastic and not drop garbage.
Ghada: I agree, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste (2) ....
Hager : Yes, you are right.
Ghada: What can our country do to help the environment ?
Hager : I think our country can help by using more (3) .... energy.

[Cairo - El Sahel 2022]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are a lot of trees, plants and flowers in the rainforest environment. Lots of animals live in these places, for example, there are insects, birds, reptiles and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta and the Red Sea are examples of this environment.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are beaches with sand in the .... environment.
   a. rainforest b. polar c. coastal d. rural
2. This text is mainly about .... environments.
   a. desert and rainforest b. polar and urban
   c. rural and desert d. coastal and rainforest
3. It's hot and .... in the rainforest environment.
   a. dry b. rainy c. windy d. cloudy

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Where is the coastal environment?

....

5. What kind of environment is the Nile Delta?

....

[Luxor - Qurna 2022]

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma asked Amir to check the washing machine. ☐
2. Amir took the laundry to his bedroom. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir helped his .... hang up the clothes.
   a. grandpa   b. dad   c. mom   d. grandma
2. Amir lives in a ....
   a. city   b. town   c. village   d. country
   (Cairo - Heliopolis 2022)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Why is your brother .... ? (Luxor - Qurna 2022)
   a. cry   b. crying   c. cries   d. cried
2. I .... the answers now. (Beni Sueif - Wasta 2023)
   a. wrote   b. write   c. writes   d. am writing
3. We aren't .... jackets. It's hot today. (Alexandria -South Alexandria 2022)
   a. wear   b. wearing   c. wore   d. wears
4. What are you .... ? (Cairo - El Sahel 2022)
   a. read   b. reads   c. to read   d. reading
5. They .... cleaning their rooms now. (Qalyobia - Benha 2022)
   a. am   b. have   c. are   d. is

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is – It – hot - the desert - in. (Giza - Kerdasa 2022)

   ....

2. in – There – a rainforest - trees - are - environment. (Menofia 2023)

   ....

3. is – to – Coastal – next – environment – the sea. (Qalyobia - Benha 2022)

   ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The importance of the High Dam

Guiding elements :

• Aswan   • electricity   • flooding   • turbines

(Qalyubia – Khanka 2022)

....

....

....

Unit 8 Customs and traditions

العادات والتقاليد

Aims of Unit Eight : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثامنة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand some traditional celebrations.
  - أفهم بعض الاحتفالات التقليدية.
- learn about some traditional recipes.
  - أتعرف على بعض الوصفات التقليدية.
- compare the present simple and present continuous.
  - أقارن بين المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر.
- understand a conversation about clothes.
  - أفهم محادثة عن الملابس.
- read about Egypt's traditions.
  - اقرأ عن تقاليد مصر.
- understand and write a tourist brochure.
  - أفهم وأكتب كتيب سياحي.
- learn about traditional fables.
  - أتعرف على الأساطير التقليدية.
- write a story.
  - أكتب قصة.



▸ Important festivals



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

sunrise	شروق الشمس	fairground	ملاهى
sunset	غروب الشمس	grateful	شاكر / ممنون
feast	عيد / وليمة	Hajj pilgrimage	مراسم الحج
creation	خلق / ابتكار	prayers	صلوات
customs	عادات	traditions	تقاليد

• Extra vocabulary

festival	احتفال	Islamic	إسلامى
Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	Coptic Easter	عيد القيامة المجيد
rides	ألعاب فى الملاهى	traditional	تقليدى
dream	حلم	mosque	مسجد
celebrations	احتفالات	stick	يلصق
lantern	فانوس	electric candle	شمعة كهربية
electric	كهربائى	bright	مشرق / لامع
pretty	جميل	God	الله / الخالق
religious	متدين / دينى	Muslims	المسلمين

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
boil	يسلق / يغلى	boiled
paint	يلون / يدهن	painted
decorate	يزين	decorated
sacrifice	يضحى	sacrificed
offer	يعرض	offered
thank	يشكر	thanked
prepare	يجهز	prepared
last	يستمر	lasted

Irregular

Present		Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
meet	يقابل	met
spend	يقضى	spent
wear	يرتدى	wore
feel	يشعر	felt
hang	يعلق	hung

Did you know ?
The ancient Egyptians had many festivals. Wepet Renpet was a festival marking the beginning of a new year. It celebrated the first flooding of the Nile. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it around mid-July.
كان لدى قدماء المصريين العديد من الأعياد. كان مهرجان ويت رنبيت يمثل بداية عام جديد. وكان احتفالا بأول فيضان لنهر النيل. احتفل به القدماء المصريين فى منتصف شهر يوليو.

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at sunrise	عند شروق الشمس	get ready	يستعد
last for	يستمر لمدة	listen to	يستمع إلى
give out ... to	يعطي / يوزع ... لـ	come up	يرتفع / تشرق
go down at night	يغرب في الليل	on the side of	على جانب

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
celebrate	to spend time with others, being happy and having fun أن نقضي الوقت مع الآخرين، ونشعر بالسعادة والاستمتاع
prayer	important words which you say to give thanks or ask for help كلمات مهمة نقولها للشكر أو لطلب المساعدة
sunrise	is when the sun comes up in the morning عندما تشرق الشمس في الصباح
sunset	is when the sun goes down at night عندما تغرب الشمس في الليل
grateful	feeling that you want to thank someone الشعور بأنك تريد أن تشكر شخص ما
give out	to offer something أن تقدم شيء ما
fairground	an open area of land where people can enjoy rides مساحة مفتوحة من الأرض حيث يمكن للناس الاستمتاع بركوب ألعاب الملاهي



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The sun comes .... in the morning.
   a. down b. up c. next d. away
2. To .... means to spend time with others, being happy and having fun.
   a. pray b. celebrate c. give d. open
3. The .... is an open area of land where people can enjoy rides.
   a. school b. hospital c. class d. fairground



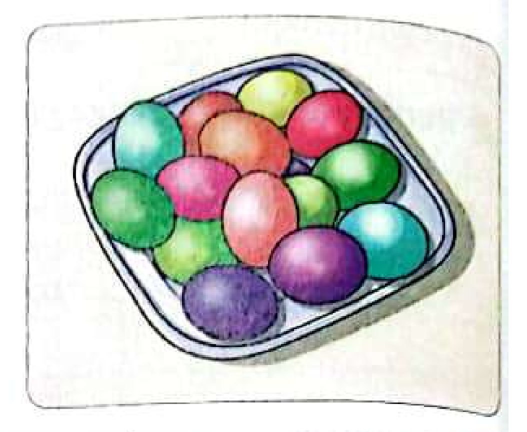
II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Important festivals

1. Sham El-Nessim



I love **celebrating**[1] Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of **creation**[2] and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at **sunrise**[3] to get ready.
Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games. Sometimes there are **fairgrounds**[4] with rides for children - they are a lot of fun!
Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different traditional food, often until **sunset**[5]! We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

[1] الاحتفال
[2] خلق / ابتكار
[3] شروق الشمس
[4] ملاهي
[5] غروب الشمس

2. Eid Al-Adha



Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream.

١- شم النسيم : أحب الاحتفال بشم النسيم مع عائلتي. الاحتفال هو لبداية فصل الربيع وهو قديم جدًا. كما احتفل به قدماء المصريين، باعتباره عيدًا للخلق وحياة جديدة. شـم النسيم دائمًا في نفس يوم الاثنين لعيد القيامة المجيد. لأنها بداية الربيع؛ الطقس في شم النسيم عادة مشمس ودافئ. استيقظ دائمًا عند شروق الشمس للاستعداد. يذهب الكثير من الناس مع عائلاتهم لمقابلة الأصدقاء في المتنزهـات أو الحدائق أو الشـواطئ. نأكل الكثير من الطعام اللذيذ ونعزف الموسـيقى ونلعب الألعاب. في بعض الأحيان توجد ملاهـي بها ألعاب للأطفال - فهي ممتعة للغاية! قبل يوم الاحتفال، نقضي الوقت في إعداد الكثير من الأطعمة التقليدية المختلفة، غالبًا حتى غروب الشمس! نحن أيضًا نسلق البيض، ثم نقوم بتلوينه وتزيينه بألوان مختلفة لنجعله يبدو جميل.
٢- عيد الأضحى : يستمر عيد الأضحى عادة لمدة أربعة أيام، وهو عيد إسلامي مهم للغاية. وهو احتفال بالوقت الذي استمع فيه إبراهيم إلى الله في المنام.

At Eid Al-Adha, many people **sacrifice**[6] a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We **give out**[7] meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for **prayers**[8] and we are **grateful**[9] for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a **feast**[10] together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the **Hajj pilgrimage**[11].

[6] يضحى
[7] يعطى / يوزع
[8] صلوات / دعوات
[9] شاكر / ممنون
[10] عيد / وليمة
[11] مراسم الحج

فى عيد الأضحى، يضحى كثير من الناس بخروف ويأكلون بعض لحومها فى طبق تقليدى يسمى الفتة. نقدم اللحم لعائلتنا وأصدقائنا. خلال عيد الأضحى نذهب إلى المسجد للصلاة ونحن ممتنون لكل الأشياء الجيدة فى حياتنا. نرتدى أفضل ملابسنا للاحتفالات ونزور عائلتنا وأصدقائنا. نعطى بعضنا البعض هدايا ونتناول وليمة معًا. عيد الأضحى هو فى شهر ذى الحجة عندما يذهب المسلمون إلى مراسم الحج.

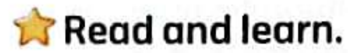
Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "grateful" means................
a. worried b. thankful c. careful d. angry

Practice 2. The word "..............." is a large meal for many people.
a. sacrifice b. prayer c. feast d. pilgrimage

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.



This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I washed a glass jar and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and bright in the night time!



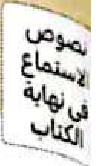
هذا العام صنعت فانوس خاص لشهر رمضان. غسلت برطمانًا زجاجيا ووضعت بعض الورق الملون على جانبه. أعطتنى أمى شمعة كهربائية صغيرة لأضعها بالداخل. علقته على الباب الأمامى لمنزلنا. إنه جميل و مضئ فى الليل!

Describe the relationship between two ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين فكرتين.

Learn 1. Where did the writer hang the lantern?
- On the front door of the house.

Practice 2. What did his mom give him to put inside the jar?
- ....

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for .... days.
   a. seven b. four c. two d. eight
2. At Eid Al-Adha, we eat meat in a traditional dish called ....
   a. koshari b. fish c. fatta d. rice
3. We wear our .... clothes for the celebrations.
   a. best b. old c. black d. ugly
4. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of ....
   a. Zu Elhijja b. Shawwal c. Ramadan d. Muharram

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

paper – bright – stuck – electric

This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I washed a glass jar and (1) .... some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small (2) .... candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It's pretty and (3) .... in the night time.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. stuck – some – I – paper – colored – the jar – on.

....

2. food – you – at a feast – What – can – eat ?

....

3. celebrated – The Ancient – El-Nessim – Egyptians – Sham.

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Nader. I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different traditional food, often until the sunset. We boil eggs, then paint and decorate them in different colors to make them look beautiful. The festival is for the **start** of spring so the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at the sunrise to get ready. We go to the park and play games. Sometimes there are fairgrounds with rides for children.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is about "Celebrating ....".
   a. Ramadan
   b. Eid Al-Adha
   c. Sham El-Nessim
   d. Christmas

2. The underlined word "<u>start</u>" is the opposite of "..................".
   a. change
   b. color
   c. end
   d. beginning

3. At Sham El-Nessim, the weather is sunny and ....
   a. hot
   b. rainy
   c. cold
   d. warm

B. Answer the following questions :

4. When do we celebrate Sham El-Nessim ?

....

5. How do we celebrate Sham El-Nessim? Mention three.

....

• **5** **Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Eid Al-Adha

Guiding elements :

• Islamic festival • celebrate • sheep • mosque

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 2

▶ Grandma's recipes

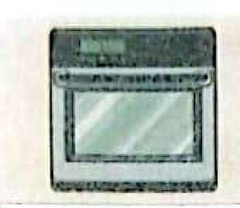


I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



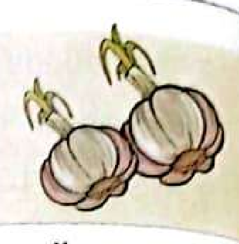
spices توابل



oven فرن



fatta فتة



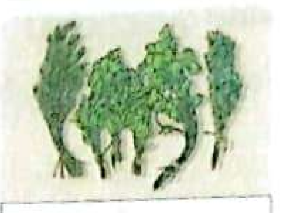
garlic ثوم



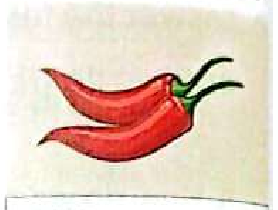
olive oil زيت زيتون



vinegar خل



herbs أعشاب



chilli فلفل حار

Extra vocabulary

layer	طبقة	kitchen	مطبخ	cook book	كتاب طهي
ful medames	فول مدمس	lemon juice	عصير ليمون	meat	لحم
hawawshi	حواوشي	carefully	بحرص / بعناية	tomato sauce	صلصة طماطم
beans	فول	recipe	وصفة طهي	beef	لحم بقري
pastry	معجنات	meal	وجبة	part	جزء
dish	طبق	sayadeya	سمك صيادية	easily	بسهولة
lamb	لحم الضأن				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
cook	يطهو / يطبخ	cooked	digest	يهضم	digested
describe	يصف	described	press	يضغط	pressed
share	يشارك	shared	bake	يخبز	baked

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- made with مصنوع من
- around the meat حول اللحم
- take a long time يستغرق مدة طويلة
- baked in مخبوز في

Did you know ?

Bread was important in ancient Egypt. There are paintings in the tomb of "Ty" in Saqqara which show how people made it.

الخبز كان هام جدًا في مصر القديمة. هناك لوحات في مقبرة "تي" في سقارة تظهر كيف كان الناس يصنعوه.

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Grandma's Cook book



Aya was visiting her **grandma**[1]. Grandma was making a meal, and Aya was sitting in the **kitchen**[2] looking **carefully**[3] at Grandma's books. Grandma cooked very **well**[4] and she had her own cook book. It described different **meals**[5] and had pictures of delicious food.

"Wow, Grandma," said Aya. "You have lots of different meals in your book!"

"Yes, I do," said Grandma. "I often share **recipes**[6] with family and friends in other parts of Egypt. I like to **try**[7] new things."

"These look delicious! Can you make all of these?"

"Yes, I can. And I can **easily**[8] show you, too! What would you like to make?"

"Hmm, that's difficult," said Aya. "There are so many recipes to choose from."

[1] جدة
[2] مطبخ
[3] بعناية
[4] بشكل جيد
[5] وجبات
[6] وصفات طهى
[7] يحاول
[8] بسهولة

كتاب طبخ الجدة : كانت آية تزور جدتها. كانت الجدة تعد وجبة وكانت آية جالسة فى المطبخ تنظر بعناية فى كتب الجدة. كانت الجدة تطبخ بطريقة جيدة وكان لديها كتاب طبخ خاص بها. كان يصف العديد من الوجبات المختلفة بصور الأكل اللذيذ. قالت آية : "واو يا جدتى. لديك الكثير من الوجبات المختلفة فى كتابك!". قالت الجدة : "نعم بالفعل. غالبًا ما أشارك الوصفات مع العائلة والأصدقاء فى أجزاء أخرى من مصر. أحب أن أجرب أشياء جديدة. تبدو الوجبات لذيذة! هل تستطيعين عمل كل هؤلاء ؟" "أجل، أستطيع. ويمكننى أن أريك بسهولة أيضًا! ماذا تودين أن تصنعين ؟ قالت آية. همم هذا صعب. هناك العديد من الوصفات للاختيار من بينها.

Describe the relationship between two ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين فكرتين

Learn 1. Who does grandma share recipes with ?
- She shares recipes with family and friends in other parts of Egypt.

Practice 2. How was grandma's food ?

....

استمع، اقرأ وتعرف.

Listen, read and identify.

The meals in Grandma's cook book

Ful Medames فول مدمس



This dish uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli, and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.

يستخدم هذا الطبق الفول المطبوخ مع عصير الليمون والثوم والبصل والفلفل الحار والأعشاب. لا يحتوى أبدًا على أى لحوم. نحن دائمًا نأكله مع الخبز.

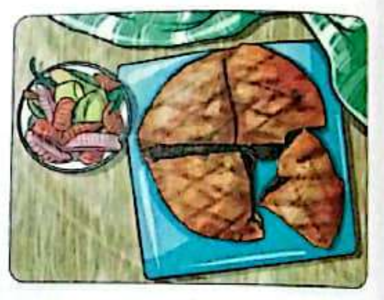
Fatta فتة



Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

تحتوى الفتة على طبقات من الأرز والخبز مع صلصة الطماطم والخل واللحم. يستغرق هضمها وقتًا طويلًا، لذلك لا نأكلها كثيرًا.

Hawawshi حواوشى



Hawawshi is delicious! It is made with bread and beef or lamb. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs, and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.

الحواوشى لذيذ؟ هو مصنوع من الخبز ولحم البقر أو الضأن. يطهى اللحم بالبصل والأعشاب والبهارات. يتم وضع الخبز حول اللحم ويُطهى. فى بعض الأحيان نأكله مع السلطة.

Sayadeya صيادية

People who live near the coast often make sayadeya. We use fish, which is baked in the oven with olive oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices. It's delicious! We eat it with rice and bread.

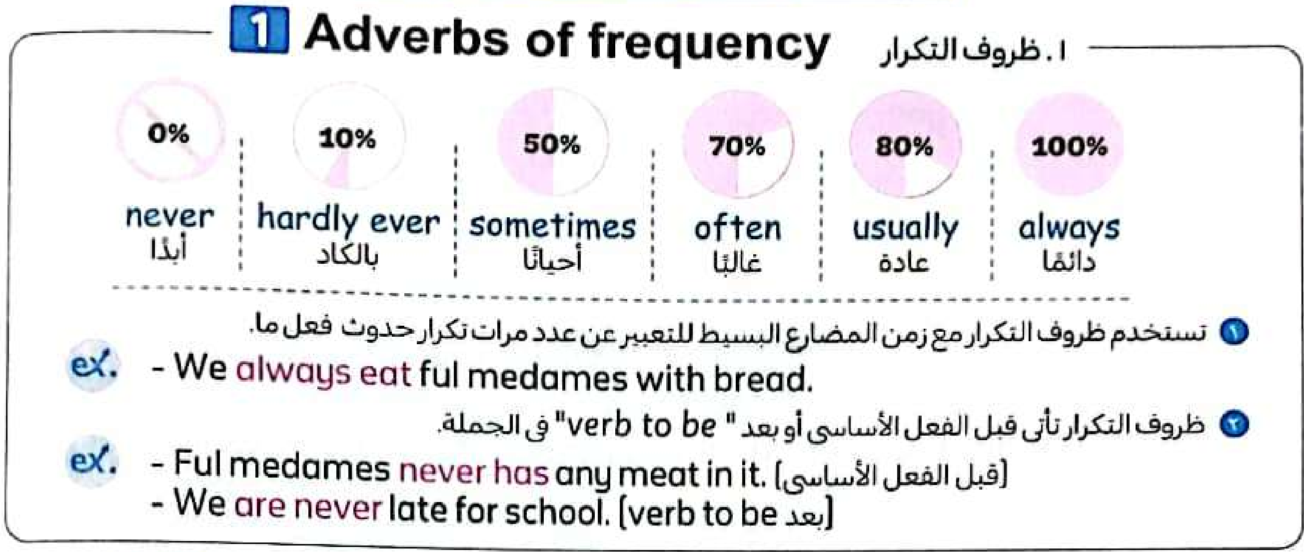
الناس الذين يعيشون بالقرب من الساحل غالبًا ما يصنعون الصيادية. نستخدم السمك المطهى بالفرن بزيت الزيتون والبصل والطماطم والأعشاب والبهارات. إنها لذيذة! نأكله مع الأرز والخبز.

Make logical inferences.
ضع استنتاجات منطقية.

Learn 1. Which dish is made of meat or lamb ?
- Hawawshi.

Practice 2. What's the favorite dish for people who live near the coast?
....

III Language



1 Adverbs of frequency ١. ظروف التكرار

0%	10%	50%	70%	80%	100%
never أبدًا	hardly ever بالكاد	sometimes أحيانًا	often غالبًا	usually عادة	always دائمًا

❶ تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

ex. - We always eat ful medames with bread.

❷ ظروف التكرار تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

ex. - Ful medames never has any meat in it. (قبل الفعل الأساسي)
- We are never late for school. (verb to be بعد)

2 The Present Simple Tense ٢. زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

◂ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

Formation : التكوين

A. Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject	Verb (inf. مصدر الفعل)	Rest of the sentence
I / You / We / They / plural noun	eat	lunch at 2 pm every day.
He / She / It / singular noun	eats	

With "he," "she," and "it," we add "-s, es, ies".

B. Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject	"do / does" + "not"	Base form	Rest of sentence
I / You / We / They / plural noun	do not (don't)	(inf.) go	outside.
He / She / It / singular noun	does not (doesn't)		

• Help your child identify adverbs of frequency and the present simple tense.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ظروف التكرار و زمن المضارع البسيط

صيغـــة الاستفهام

C. Interrogative

[١] السؤال بـ "هل" :

(1) Yes/No Question :

"Do / Does"	Subject	Base form	باقي الجملة
Do	I /you/we/they/ plural noun	(inf.) like	meat ?
Does	he / she / it / singular noun		

Long answers الإجابات الكاملة

Yes, + subject فاعل + always / usually / sometimes / often + inf. / inf. + (s, es, ies)

No, + subject فاعل + never / hardly ever + inf. / inf. + (s, es, ies)

[٢] السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

(2) Wh-question :

Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I / we / you / they / plural noun	(inf.) مصدر الفعل ..... ?
	does	he / she / it / singular noun	

ex. ▸ What do you do at night ?

◂ ملاحظات :

⭐ الفعل بعد (doesn't - don't) يكون فى المصدر (أى بدون أى إضافات).

⭐ استخدام (hardly ever - never) يعطى معنى النفى مع عدم حذف الإضافات (s, es) فى نهاية الفعل مع الضمائر (He - She - It) أو أى اسم مفرد.

ex. - He never takes a nap. - She hardly ever walks to school.

⭐ ever تستخدم فى السؤال فقط وعند الإجابة تستبدل بأحد ظروف التكرار السابقة.

ex. - Do you ever make a lantern for Ramadan ?
- Yes, I always make a lantern for Ramadan.

◂ لاحظ : عند الاجابة بالنفى يمكن استخدام (hardly ever أو never) مع ملاحظة عدم حذف النهايات "s,es" فى الفعل مع الضمائر (He / She / It) أو أى اسم مفرد.



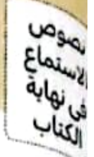
Pop Quiz on Language

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. I'm always on time. I'm .... late.
   a. never b. sometimes c. always d. usually
2. He often .... magazines in the morning.
   a. reads b. reading c. are reading d. to read

3. It .... rains in summer.
   a. always b. usually c. often d. hardly ever
4. She likes music. She .... listens to music.
   a. always b. hardly c. never d. ever
5. He .... sunburn.
   a. always gets b. gets always c. always get d. get always
6. Do you .... chocolate milk ?
   a. likes b. like c. liked d. to like
7. Reem .... watch films.
   a. am not b. isn't c. doesn't d. don't
8. My parents .... in a two-bedroom apartment.
   a. live b. lives c. are live d. to live
9. What do you usually .... on the weekend ?
   a. wearing b. wears c. to wear d. wear
10. She .... plays in the street. She plays at home.
   a. usually b. always c. never d. ever
11. Which dish .... people sometimes eat with salad ?
   a. does b. do c. is d. are
12. Ful medames .... has meat in it.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. never d. isn't

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My favorite meal for breakfast is ....
   a. fatta   b. koshari   c. hawawshi   d. ful medames
2. Ful medames never has any .... in it.
   a. meat   b. beans   c. onions   d. herbs
3. I like eating .... for lunch.
   a. beans   b. hawawshi   c. chicken   d. tomatoes
4. .... has layers of rice and bread.
   a. Hawawshi   b. Fish   c. Fatta   d. Chilli

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

cook – meal – difficult – share

Nessma : What are you doing, Mom?
Mom : I'm making a (1) ....
Nessma : You cook very well. What is this?
Mom : It's my own (2) .... book.
Nessma : Wow, it describes different meals.
Mom : Yes. I often (3) .... recipes with my friends.
Nessma : Can you make all of these?
Mom : Yes, and I can show you easily.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Egyptian food is one of the most delicious food in the world. It's rich and simple. Fatta is one of the most <u>popular</u> traditional Egyptian food, and it is very popular for different classes of society, young and old. It has also become very famous in most of the Arab countries.

It's a delicious dish made mainly with meat soup, bread, rice and tomato sauce. It is an easy recipe to make. It's a nutritious dish that contains many proteins and carbohydrates that help raise energy levels.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is mainly about "Egyptian ....".
   a. food   b. culture   c. history   d. people
2. The underlined word "**popular**" can be replaced by "................".
   a. disliked   b. unknown   c. famous   d. old-fashioned
3. We make fatta by using ...., rice and tomato sauce.
   a. beans   b. French fries   c. meat soup   d. fish

B. **Answer the following questions :**

4. Describe the Egyptian food in one word.

....

5. Is fatta useful for our body ? Why ?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. eat - medames - bread – We – ful - with.

....

2. cook – to – would – you – What – like?

....

3. shares – Grandma – the family - with - her - recipes.

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He always .... to school early.
   a. gone b. go c. goes d. going
2. Fatta .... layers of rice and bread.
   a. has b. have c. having d. don't have
3. People .... sayadeya with fish.
   a. make often b. often make c. make never d. make usually
4. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. often b. usually c. always d. never
5. She .... English and French well.
   a. are speaking b. speak c. speaks d. speaking

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Nader about your favorite meals. Your name is Saleh and your email address is saleh20@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is nader190@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- fatta
- layers
- ful medames
- lemon juice

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

Lesson 3

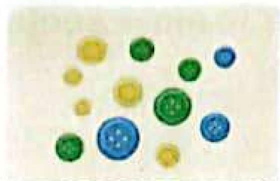
▶ Language



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


hizam = belt = sash حزام

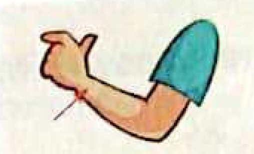

buttons أزرار


sleeve كُم


galabeya جلابية


scarf وشاح


jewelry مجوهرات


wrist معصم اليد


sandals حذاء مفتوح (صندل)

Extra vocabulary

warm	دافئ	present	هدية	different	مختلف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	linen	كِتّان	leather	جلد مدبوغ
same	نفس (الشئ)	cool	منعش	vegetarian	نباتى
shoes	حذاء	white	لون أبيض	language	لغة
striped	مقلم / مخطط	long	طويل	kaftan	قفطان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
prefer	يفضل	preferred	wear	يرتدى	wore
talk	يتكلم	talked	keep	يحافظ	kept
			speak	يتحدث	spoke

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

made from	مصنوع من	in hot weather	فى الطقس الحار
type of	نوع من	special days	أيام مميزة

Sandals are a type of shoe. They are sometimes made from leather.
الصنادل نوع من الأحذية فى بعض الأحيان تكون مصنوعة من الجلد المدبوغ

Read and identify.

Word	Description
sandals	These are a type of shoe. They are sometimes made from leather. إنه نوع من الأحذية. في بعض الأحيان تكون مصنوعة من الجلد.
kaftan	This is a long, loose top. People wear it over a galabeya. It is often made from cotton. هذه قطعة ملابس علوية طويلة فضفاضة. يرتديها الناس فوق الجلابية. غالبًا ما تكون مصنوعة من القطن.
galabeya	This is a long, loose shirt worn by men or women. It is often made from cotton. قميص طويل فضفاض يرتديه الرجال أو النساء. غالبًا ما تكون مصنوعة من القطن.
hizam	This is a type of belt worn around a kaftan. هذا نوع من الحزام يلبس حول القفطان.
jewelry	This is something you wear to look pretty. You wear it on your fingers, round your wrist, etc. هذا شيء ترتديه لتبدو جميلًا. يمكنك ارتدائه على أصابعك، حول معصمك، إلخ.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. I bought a new shirt with long ....
   a. sleeves b. sandals c. kaftan d. jewelry
2. .... is a long, loose shirt. It's made from cotton.
   a. Jewelry b. Hat c. Galabeya d. Belt
3. .... is a long, loose top. People wear it over a galabeya.
   a. Hizam b. Jewelry c. Bag d. Kaftan
4. Women usually wear .... made of gold to look pretty.
   a. jewelry b. skirts c. socks d. galabeya
5. Girls like to wear long, ... clothes.
   a. loose b. wooden c. metal d. same
6. My bag is made of ....
   a. wood b. leather c. jewelry d. glass
7. My jacket has colored ....
   a. galabeyas b. buttons c. skirts d. pencils



Why did ancient Egyptians wear white clothes ?

Presenter : Hello and welcome to Radio Now. What did people wear in the past, and what are they wearing now ? Today I'm talking to Dr Samir about clothes in Egypt - Hello, Dr Samir!

المقدم : أهلًا ومرحبًا بكم في "رادبو الآن". ماذا كان يرتدى الناس في الماضى، وماذا يرتدون الآن ؟ أتحدث اليوم مع دكتور سمير عن الملابس في مصر - مرحبًا، يا دكتور سمير!

Dr Samir : Hello!

د. سمير : مرحبًا!

Presenter : So, when we think about ancient Egyptian clothing, it's often quite simple, isn't it ?

المقدم : لذا، عندما نفكر في الملابس المصرية القديمة، غالبًا ما تكون بسيطة جدًا، أليس كذلك ؟

Dr Samir : Yes, that's right - we have lots of old paintings that show people wearing loose white linen. White is a good color to wear in hot weather, and loose linen clothes help to keep you cool.

د. سمير : نعم، هذا صحيح - لدينا الكثير من اللوحات القديمة التي تظهر أشخاصًا يرتدون الكتان الأبيض الفضفاض. اللون الأبيض جيد لارتدائه في الطقس الحار، وتساعد الملابس الكتانية الفضفاضة على إبقائك باردًا.

Presenter : I see - and what other things did people wear at that time ?

المقدم : أفهم ذلك - وما الأشياء الأخرى التي كان يرتديها الناس في ذلك الوقت ؟

Dr Samir : Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals on their feet. These were made from leather. And they wore lots of jewelry, too. It was important to look beautiful.

د. سمير : كان العديد من قدماء المصريين يرتدون الصنادل على أقدامهم. كانت هذه مصنوعة من الجلد. وكانوا يرتدون الكثير من المجوهرات أيضًا. كان من المهم أن تبدو جميلًا.

Presenter : So how are things different today ?

المقدم : إذًا كيف تختلف الأمور اليوم ؟

Dr Samir : Well there's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. Men sometimes wear a striped kaftan over this with a hizam, which is a colored sash around their body. Men and women also wear items on their heads such as scarves or different styles of hats. In some cities, though, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts.

د. سمير : حسـنًا يوجـد ألوان أكثر في الـزى المصرى التقليـدى اليوم، لكن يفضـل الكثير من الناس الملابس الواسعة. في بعض أجزاء مصر، من المعتاد للرجال والسيدات ارتداء الجلباب، التي تكون طويلـة وفضفاضة بأكمام طويلة. أحيانًا يرتدى الرجال القفطان المخطط على الجلباب وحزام الذى يكون ملون ومربوط حول الجسـم. يرتدى أيضًا الرجال والنساء أشياء فوق الرأس مثل الوشاح أو أنواع مختلفة من القبعات. مع ذلك في بعض المدن يرتدى الرجال والنساء ملابس اكثر حداثه مثل البناطيل والقمصان أو الفساتين والجيبات.

Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.



This is Hana. Today she is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T-shirt and a skirt, but today is a **special**[1] day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family.

[1] مميز / خاص
[2] نباتى
[3] وصفة طهى



This is Adam. Today he is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a **vegetarian**[2] **recipe**[3].

هذه هنا. اليوم هى ترتدى فستان أزرق. هى عادة ما ترتدى قميص وتنورة (جيبة) لكن اليوم، هو يوم مميز. هى تحتفل بعيد الفطر مع عائلتها.

هذا هو آدم. اليوم هو يساعد والدته فى صنع فول مدمس. هم غالبًا يأكلون اللحم لكن اليوم هم يطهون وصفة نباتية.

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.



III Language

The Present Simple and Present Continuous Tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين	Present simple المضارع البسيط	Present continuous المضارع المستمر
Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة	I, We, You, They + inf. مصدر الفعل . He, She, It + inf. + (s/es/ies) • They often eat meat. • He usually helps his mom.	Subject + (am/is/are) + inf. + ing • I'm talking to Dr Samir. • She is wearing a blue dress.
Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية	I, We, You, They → don't + inf. He, She, It → doesn't + inf. • We don't go to school on Fridays. • She doesn't get up early on Saturdays.	Subject + am not / isn't / aren't + inf. + ing • We aren't doing our homework now. • He isn't helping his dad in the garden.
Interrogative الجمل الاستفهامية	Wh- word + do / does + subj. +inf. ... ? • What do you wear to do sports ? – I wear a T-shirt and shorts.	Wh- word + am / is / are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ? • What are they wearing now ? – They are wearing the galabeyas.
Keywords الكلمات الدالة على الزمن	always, usually, often, never, every, sometimes	now, at the moment, Look!, Listen!, Watch out!
Usage الاستخدام	for habits and facts	Something that is happening now.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I am .... to the post office.
   a. go b. went c. going d. goes
2. They are .... hands at the moment.
   a. to shake b. shakes c. shake d. shaking
3. My mother .... coffee now.
   a. makes b. is making c. to make d. made
4. My mother .... the dishes at the moment.
   a. washed b. wash c. washes d. is washing
5. She doesn't .... a brother.
   a. having b. had c. has d. have
6. The journey usually .... an hour.
   a. takes b. take c. to take d. taking
7. They .... tennis every weekend.
   a. play b. plays c. playing d. to play
8. Hello! Are you .... for a bus ?
   a. wait b. waiting c. waited d. to wait
9. I am .... my lunch right now.
   a. eat b. eats c. ate d. eating
10. My sister .... studying English.
   a. has b. is c. does d. can

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word[s] in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية.

1. Zeinab .... [read] a book about Egyptian food in her bedroom now.
2. My mom always .... [make] kahk for Eid Al-Fitr.
3. Fares .... [live] in an apartment near the coast.
4. We are .... [listen] to some traditional Egyptian music.
5. The children usually .... [plays] games in the park on the weekend.
6. Look! I am .... [paint] some eggs for Sham El-Nessim.
7. What are you .... [do] this week ?

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hana is wearing a blue .... today.
   a. T-shirt b. pants c. dress d. skirt
2. Hana usually wears a T-shirt and a ....
   a. skirt b. scarf c. galabeya d. pants
3. Hana is helping mom in the ....
   a. street b. kitchen c. living room d. bedroom
4. Mom .... very well.
   a. wears b. travels c. walks d. cooks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What are they .... now?
   a. makes b. make c. making d. to make
2. My sister .... to her friends now.
   a. is talking b. talked c. are talked d. talking
3. Salma usually .... skirts.
   a. wear b. wears c. to wear d. wearing
4. Esraa usually .... shopping on Friday.
   a. go b. going c. goes d. to go
5. She doesn't .... to the park on weekends.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. of – type – is – A hizam – a – belt.

....

2. today – wearing – you – What – are?

....

3. sometimes – Men – kaftan – wear – the galabeya – over.

....

4 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

paintings – leather – museum – simple

Injy : What do you know about clothes in Egypt ?
Mom : Ancient Egyptian clothing is often quite (1) ....
Injy : How did you know ?
Mom : We have lots of old (2) .... that show people wearing loose, white, linen clothes.

Injy : What other things did people wear that time?
Mom : Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals on their feet.
Injy : What were they made from?
Mom : They made from (3) ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. Men sometimes wear a striped kaftan over this with a hizam, which is a colored sash around their body. Men and women also wear items on their heads such as scarves or different styles of hats. In some cities, though, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is about "..................".
   a. Egyptian festivals b. Egyptian food
   c. Egyptian Museums d. Traditional Egyptian clothing

2. The underlined word "sash" means ....
   a. dress b. belt c. crown d. skirt

3. Trousers, shirts and skirts are .... clothes.
   a. old b. warm c. modern d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What do men and women wear on their heads?
....

5. What type of clothing do many people still prefer?
....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Traditional clothes

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :
• galabeya • sleeves • white • men • linen

....
....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 4

▸ Welcome to Egypt



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

sights	معالم	host	مضيف
guests	ضيوف	generous	كريم /سخي
stew	خضار مطبوخ مع اللحم	festival	احتفال

• Extra vocabulary

main temple	المعبد الرئيسى	wife	زوجة
visitor	زائر	friendly	ودود
stuffed vegetables	خضروات محشية	typical meal	وجبة نمطية
dried salted fish	سمك مجفف ومملح	statue	تمثال

• Famous statues of Ancient Egyptians التماثيل الشهيرة للمصريين القدماء

Ramses II	رمسيس الثانى	Ra	الملك رع
Nefertari	الملكة نفرتارى	Amun	تمثال آمون
Ptah	الملك بتاح	Hatshepsut	الملكة حتشبسوت

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
invite	يدعو	invited
welcome	يرحب	welcomed
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed

Irregular

Present		Past
bring	يحضر	brought
meet	يقابل	met

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

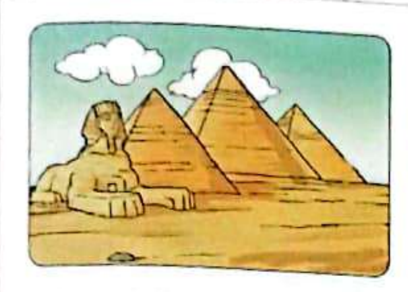
served with	يقدم مع	of course	بالطبع
go scuba diving	يقوم برياضة الغطس	famous for welcoming	مشهور بالترحيب
learn about	يتعلم عن	camping in the desert	إقامة معسكر فى الصحراء
twice a year	مرتين سنويًا		

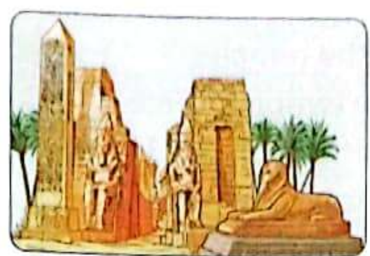
لاحظ : نستخدم حرف الجر [in] قبل الشهور in February ويستخدم [on] عندما يتم ذكر اليوم مع الشهر on February 22nd.

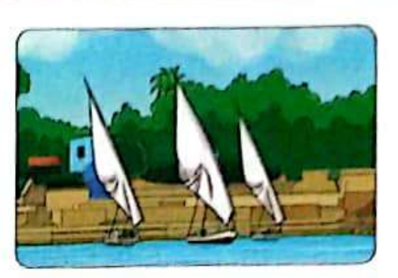
II Listening and Reading

Look, read and learn.

انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.







Egypt is a **fantastic**[1] country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing **sights**[2], eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

[1] رائع
[2] معالم
[3] ضيوف
[4] مضيف (صاحب المنزل)
[5] خضار مطبوخ مع اللحم

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting **guests**[3] to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the **host**[4] usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable **stew**[5], soup, stuffed vegetables, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal! Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called kahk, with sugar on top.
At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh.
If you visit Egypt at these times, you should try these dishes!

مصر بلد رائعة للزيارة ! هناك الكثير لتراه، مثل أهرامات الجيزة، معبد الأقصر القديم، والبحر الأحمر، ونهر النيل بالطبع. فى جميع أنحاء البلاد، يمكنك رؤية مشاهد مذهلة، وتناول الطعام اللذيذ، ومقابلة أشخاص ودودين. غالبًا ما يحب الزوار التعرف على التقاليد المصرية قبل قدومهم. يشتهر الشعب المصرى بالترحيب بالزوار بالطعام والشراب، ودعوة الضيوف إلى منازلهم. إذا تمت دعوتك إلى منزل عائلة مصرية، فمن الجيد إحضار هدية، على سبيل المثال الشوكولاتة أو الحلويات. ومع ذلك، فإن المضيف عادة لا يفتح الهدية فى الوقت الذى يحصل فيه عليها. يتم تقديم وجبة مصرية تقليدية مع جلوس الأشخاص معًا حول المنضدة. تحتوى الوجبة النمطية على الأرز ونوع من حساء الخضار والشوربة والخضروات المحشوة واللحوم أو الدجاج. المصريين كرماء للغاية ويسعدون جدًا عندما تطلب المزيد من الطعام. هذا يعنى أنك استمتعت بوجبتهم اللذيذة! بعض الاحتفالات المصرية بها طعام تقليدى أيضًا. فى عيد الفطر، يخبز الناس كعكات محلاة مميزة تسمى كحك مع السكر أعلاها. فى شم النسيم يأكل الناس السمك المملح المجفف الذى يسمى الفسيخ. إذا قمت بزيارة مصر فى هذه الأوقات، فعليك تجربة هذه الأطباق!

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، ويقرأ النص.

انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.



Look, read and learn.

The Abu Simbel Sun Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples[1] of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues[2] of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival[3] there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise[4] shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.
There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun, and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark[5]. People celebrate the Abu Simbel sun festival by getting up early to see the light[6] inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sing to celebrate this special day.

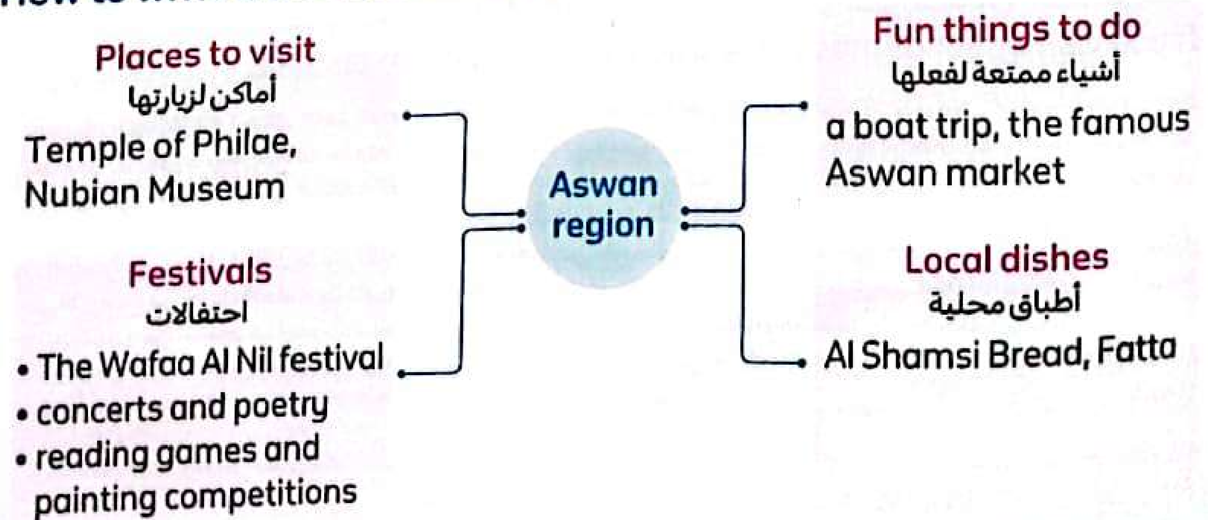
[1] معابد
[2] تماثيل
[3] احتفال
[4] شروق الشمس
[5] ظلام
[6] ضوء

بالقرب من أسوان يمكنك رؤية معابد أبو سمبل. خارج المعابد، هناك بعض التماثيل الكبيرة جدًا لرمسيس الثاني وزوجته نفرتاري. مرتين في السنة، يحتفل الناس بمهرجان الشمس لأبو سمبل هناك، في ٢٢ فبراير و٢٢ أكتوبر. في هذه الأيام، يضيء ضوء الشمس عند شروق الشمس على طول الطريق داخل المعبد الرئيسي، إلى الغرف بداخله. ويوجد داخل المعبد أربعة تماثيل : رمسيس ورع وآمون وبتاح. يضيء ضوء الشمس عليهم جميعًا ما عدا بتاح. هو دائمًا في الظلام. يحتفل الناس بمهرجان الشمس بأبو سمبل بالاستيقاظ مبكرًا لرؤية الضوء داخل المعبد عند شروق الشمس. ثم يأكل الناس، يشربون ويغنون للاحتفال بهذا اليوم المميز.

III Writing skill

How to write a tourist brochure :

كيفية كتابة كتيب سياحي:



General Exercises on Lesson 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Near ...., you can see the temples of Abu Simbel.
   a. Cairo b. Giza c. Aswan d. Alexandria
2. People celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival twice a ....
   a. day b. year c. month d. week
3. There are .... statues inside the temple.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five
4. .... is always in the dark.
   a. Ramses b. Ra c. Amun d. Ptah

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

welcoming – sights – eating – pyramids

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the (1)........................ of Giza. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing (2)........................ . Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for (3)........................ visitors with food and drink.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside. There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about "........................".
   a. The Pyramids b. Abu Simbel Temples
   c. The Queen Nefertari d. The Egyptian Museum
2. The underlined word "Twice" means .... times.
   a. one b. two c. three d. no
3. The sunlight doesn't shine on ....
   a. Ramses b. Ptah c. Amun d. Ra

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What are the statues inside the temple?

....

5. When do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They don't usually .... the present at the time they get it.
   a. is opening b. open c. opens d. opened
2. People .... special cookies called kahk.
   a. has baked b. is baking c. bake d. baking
3. People .... dried salted fish at Sham El-Nessim.
   a. eating b. has eaten c. eat d. is eating
4. It .... a good idea to bring a present today.
   a. have b. has c. was d. is
5. She .... the temples of Abu Simble near Aswan.
   a. visiting b. visits c. visit d. don't visit

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are – very – Egyptians – generous.

....

2. is – in – Ptah – the dark – always.

....

3. statues – There – inside – four - are – the temple.

....

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to tell your friend about Egypt. Your friend's name is Esraa. Your name is Amira. Your email address is amira@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is esraa@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What can visitors see in Egypt ?
- What are Egyptian people famous for ?
- What traditional food served at Egyptian festivals ?

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

Lessons **5&6**

▶ CLIL : Fables and Folklore

▶ Project





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

shipwreck	حطام سفينة	fable	حكاية أسطورية
sailor	بحار	servant	خادم
folklore	تراث شعبي	tale	حكاية

Extra vocabulary

king	ملك	nature	طبيعة	safe	آمن
successful	ناجح	problem	مشكلة	terrible	مزعج / مفزع
journey	رحلة (طويلة)	frightened	خائف	pleased	مسرور / راضٍ
giant	ضخم	storm	عاصفة	moral	أخلاق / معنوى
patient	صبور	island	جزيرة	witch	ساحرة
fire	حريق	wave	موجة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
return	يعود	returned
try	يحاول	tried
stay	يمكث / يبقى	stayed
laugh	يضحك	laughed
smile	يبتسم	smiled
kill	يقتل	killed

Irregular

Present		Past
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
speak	يتحدث	spoke
tell	يخبر	told
begin	يبدأ	began
hear	يسمع	heard
teach	يُعلم / يُدرس	taught
bring	يجلب / يُحضر	brought

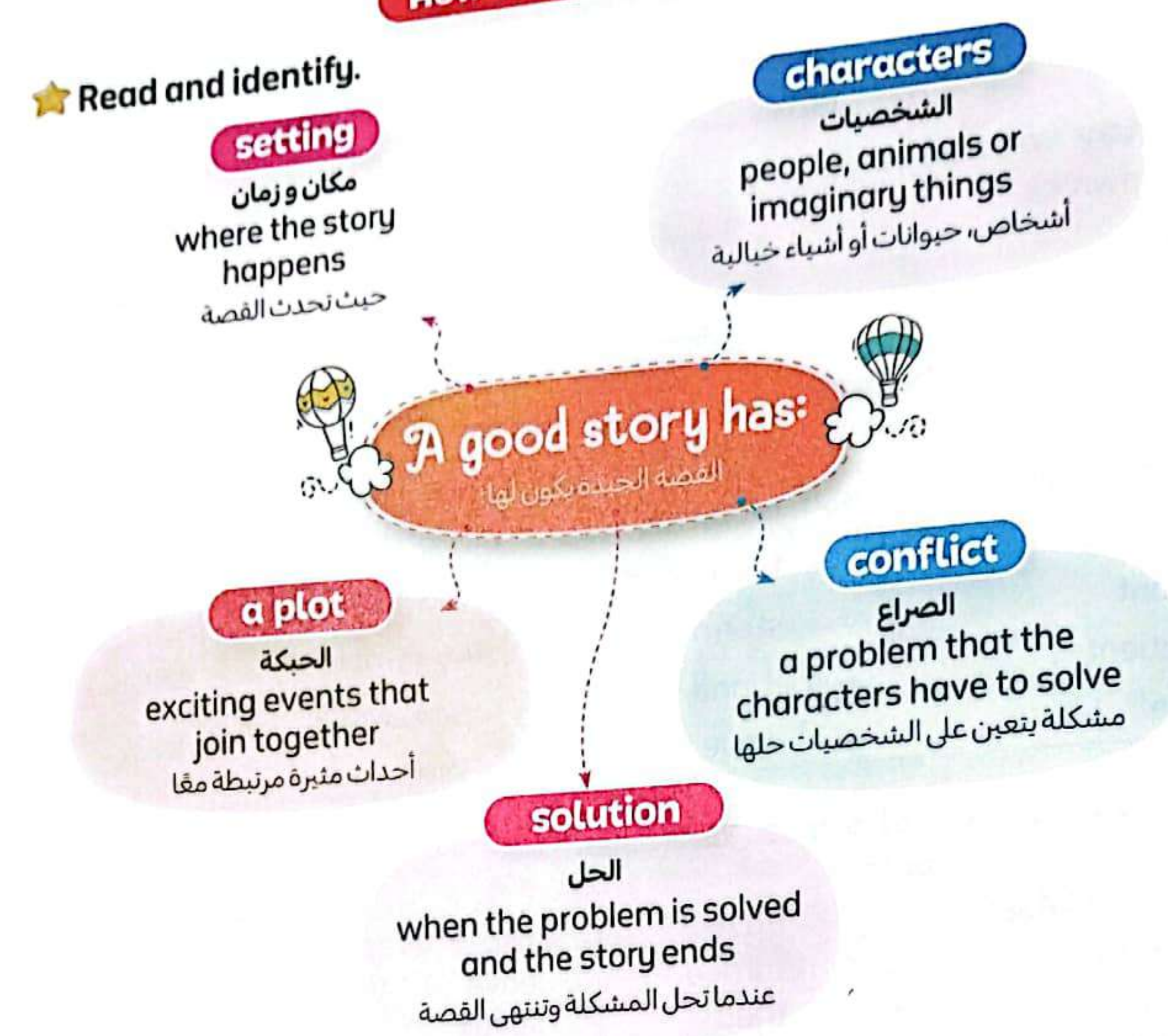
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

fell into	سقط في	look for	يبحث عن
fell down	سقط أرضًا	put ... in	يضع ... في
on the island	على الجزيرة	pass down	تورث
go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة	Don't + inf.	لا ... (للنهى) + مصدر الفعل

اقرأ وتعرف.

How to write a story

Read and identify.



اقرأ وتعلم.

Read and learn.

Fables and folklore are types of stories that are passed down from one group of people to another group of people. They teach us a lesson or "moral", and are often about animals, plants or things that happen in nature. There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

الأساطير والتراث الشعبى هي أنواع من القصص التى تتوارثها مجموعة من الناس وتنقلها إلى مجموعة أخرى من الناس. إنهم يعلموننا درسًا أو "مغزى أخلاقى"، وغالبًا ما يتحدثون عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الأشياء التى تحدث فى الطبيعة. هناك العديد من القصص من مصر القديمة.



II Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The tale of the shipwrecked sailor

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

The beginning



Long ago, the King asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His servant spoke to him.

"You must tell the King that you tried your best," he said.

"I don't want to say that I was not successful," said the man.

"Listen to my story," said the servant. "I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

"Another storm began. I saw a giant snake in the waves. His body was gold and his eyes were bright blue. I fell down as he spoke.

"How did you get to this island?" said the snake.

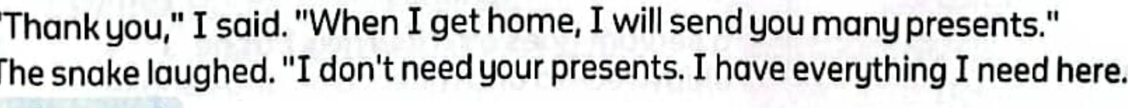
"I couldn't speak. The snake put me in his mouth and took me to the place where he lived. He asked me again how I got to the island, so I told him about the shipwreck.

The middle



"Don't be frightened," said the snake. "You'll stay on the island for four months, and you'll be safe. Then people will find you and take you home. Be patient, and you'll return to your family."
Then the snake told me what happened to him.

"Long ago, I lived on the island with my children and brothers. A star fell, bringing a terrible fire. I was the only one to live. But I stayed strong and patient, and things became better."



"Thank you," I said. "When I get home, I will send you many presents."

The snake laughed. "I don't need your presents. I have everything I need here."

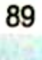
The end

"I was on the island for four months, then a ship came, just as the snake said. The snake gave me special presents to take home.

"Tell people in your city about me," he said.

I returned to my family, gave the presents to the King, and he was pleased. So, listen to my story. I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe.

The man heard the story, and smiled.



بداية القصة : منذ زمن بعيد طلب الملك من رجل مهم أن يترك مصر في مهمة خاصة. سافر الرجل مع العديد من البحارة الآخرين، لكنه لم ينجح، وعندما عاد، كان خائفًا مما سيقوله الملك. تكلم معه خادمه. قال الخادم يجب أن تخبر الملك أنك بذلت قصارى جهدك. قال الرجل : لا أريد أن أقول إنني لم أكن ناجحًا. قال الخادم : استمع إلى قصتي، أنا كنت بحارًا أيضًا. ذهبت في رحلة للملك مع أفضل بحارة في البلاد. ولكن جاءت عاصفة وغرقت سفينتنا. سقطت في البحر وسبحت إلى جزيرة. كنت وحيد وخائف. بعد ذلك، بحثت عن الطعام، وكان في الجزيرة الطعام والماء وكل ما أحتاجه.

بدأت عاصفة أخرى. رأيت ثعبان عملاق في الأمواج. كان جسده ذهبيًا وعيناه زرقاء لامعة. سقطت وهو يتكلم. قال الثعبان كيف وصلت إلى هذه الجزيرة ؟ لم أستطيع التحدث. وضعني الثعبان في فمه وأخذني إلى المكان الذي يعيش فيه. سألني مرة أخرى كيف وصلت إلى الجزيرة، فأخبرته عن تحطم السفينة.

منتصف القصة : قال الثعبان، لا تخف. ستبقى على الجزيرة لمدة أربعة أشهر، وستكون آمنًا. ثم سيجدك الناس ويأخذوك إلى موطنك. تحلى بالصبر، وستعود إلى عائلتك. ثم أخبرني الثعبان بما حدث له. منذ زمن بعيد، كنت أعيش في الجزيرة مع أطفالي وإخواني. سقط نجم، مما أدى إلى نشوب حريق رهيب. كنت الوحيد الذي عاش لكني بقيت قويًا وصبورًا. وتحسنت الأمور. قلت : "شكرًا لك"، عندما أعود إلى المنزل، سأرسل لك العديد من الهدايا. ضحك الثعبان وقال لا أحتاج إلى هداياك. لدي كل ما أحتاجه هنا.

نهاية القصة : مكثت في الجزيرة لمدة أربع أشهر، ثم جاءت سفينة، كما قال الثعبان. أعطاني الثعبان هدايا مميزة لأخذها إلى وطني. قال الثعبان، أخبر الناس في مدينتك عني. عدت إلى عائلتي، وأعطيت الهدايا للملك وكان سعيدًا. لذا أستمع إلى قصتي. كنت في مكان فظيع، لكنني الآن بأمان. سمع الرجل القصة وابتسم.

The moral of the story

When bad things happen, be strong and patient and things will get better.

عندما تحدث أشياء سيئة، كن قويًا وصبورًا وسوف تتحسن الأمور.

Determine the central moral.
وضح المغزى الرئيسي.

Learn 1. The servant was kind and tried to help the man. Why ?
- Because the snake helped him before, so he wanted to help.

Practice 2. What's the moral of the story ?
....

Now note the following :

Feature	Example
Characters	the servant, the snake
Setting	an island in the sea
A plot	a servant goes on a journey, but he is shipwrecked and meets a strange snake
Conflict	the servant wants to go home, but he can't
Resolution	people come and take the servant home



General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The King asked a man to leave Egypt for a .... job.
   a. hard b. easy c. special d. bad
2. The man traveled with many other ....
   a. doctors b. servants c. writers d. sailors
3. The man wasn't ....
   a. happy b. sad c. successful d. failed
4. When the man returned, he was .... about what the King would say.
   a. hungry b. frightened c. angry d. excited

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

food – sank – journey – sea

I was a sailor. I went on a (1) .... for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came and our ship (2) .... I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for (3) .... and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. saw – the waves – snake – I – a giant – in.
   ....
2. was – the island – on – How long – the servant ?
   ....
3. stay – the island – You'll – on – 3 months – for.
   ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Where did he .... from ?
   a. comes b. coming c. come d. came
2. .... be frightened. It isn't scary.
   a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Doing
3. Don't .... him about the surprise.
   a. tells b. told c. tell d. telling
4. I'm .... in London for the next two weeks.
   a. worked b. working c. works d. work
5. She is .... in the park at the moment.
   a. walking b. walks c. walked d. walk

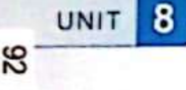


Skills

UNIT 8

1 Reading comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية العامة للنص).

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

In Egypt, there are so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights. You can eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food, and drink. They are also famous for inviting guests to their home. You should bring a present if you are invited to an Egyptian family's home.

شرح الحل بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أن النص يدور حول :
Traditions in Egypt

- The text is about " .... ".
- The main / general idea of the text is about " .... ".
- The text talks about ....
- What's the main idea of the text / What's the text about ?

a. Eid Al Adha b. Traditions in Egypt
c. Sham El-Nessim d. Schools in Egypt

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة منتقلا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I love eating hawawshi. This is made with bread and beef or lamb. Cook the meat with onions, herbs, and spices. Press the bread together around the meat and then cook it. We sometimes eat it with salad. It is very delicious.

- The text is about ....

or The main / general idea of the text is about ....
or The text talks about ....
or What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. A celebration b. Hawawshi
c. A party d. A festival

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [معابد أبو سمبل] و [شم النسيم] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
The Abu Simbel Temples	▶ Write the meaning : معابد .... يحتفل .... تماثيل .... ظلام .... شروق الشمس .... زوجة	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. You can see the .... of Abu Simbel near Aswan. 2. Ptah is always in the .... 3. There are four .... inside the temple. 4. People .... the Abu Simbel Sun Festival by getting up early.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "The Abu Simbel Temples" ....
Sham El-Nessim	الطقس .... دافئ .... احتفال .... فصل الربيع .... حياة .... موسيقى	1. Sham El-Nessim is the start of .... 2. The Ancient Egyptians celebrated it as a festival of creation and new .... 3. The weather in Sham El-Nessim is sunny and .... 4. We eat nice food and play .... to celebrate Sham El-Nessim.	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "Sham El-Nessim" ....

Skills

3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درسناها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Sham El-Nessim	start - spring	Sham El-Nessim festival is for the start of spring.
	old - festival	Sham El-Nessim is a very old festival.
	Coptic Easter	Sham El-Nessim is on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.
	weather - warm	The weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm.
	decorate - eggs	We decorate boiled eggs in different colors.
Eid Al-Adha	lasts for	Eid Al-Adha lasts for four days.
	Islamic - festival	It is a very important Islamic festival.
	sacrifice - sheep	Many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat.
	mosque - prayers	People go to the mosque for prayers.
	wear - clothes	We wear our best clothes for the celebration.
The Abu Simbel Sun Festival	see - temples	We can see the temples of Abu Simbel near Aswan.
	statues	There are four statues inside the temples.
	celebrate	People celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival.
Traditional Egyptian recipes	cooked	Ful medames uses beans cooked with lemon juice and herbs.
	eat - bread	We eat ful medames with bread.
	layers	Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce and meat.
	made with	Hawawshi is made with bread and beef or lamb.
	hawawshi	We sometimes eat hawawshi with salad.
	sayadeya	People who live near the coast often make sayadeya.

Skills

4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٥ جملة).

1 Culture and traditions in Egypt

In Egypt, there are so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile.[1] In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights.[2] You can eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.[3] Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food, and drink.[4] They are also famous for inviting guests to their home.[5] You should bring a present if you are invited to an Egyptian family's home.[6]

2 The Abu Simbel Sun Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel.[7] Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari[8]. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd.[9] On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.[10] There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun, and Ptah.[11] The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah.[12] He is always in the dark.[13]

3 Sham El-Nessim

The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old.[14] The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life.[15] Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.[16] Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm.[17] We eat lots of nice food and play music and games.[18] We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate them.[19]

4 Hawawshi recipe

I love eating hawawshi.[20] This is made with bread and beef or lamb.[21] Cook the meat with onions, herbs, and spices.[22] Press the bread together around the meat and then cook it.[23] We sometimes eat it with salad.[24] It is very delicious.[25]



Review on unit 8

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثامنة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

sunrise	شروق الشمس	mosque	مسجد
feast	وليمة / عيد	onions	بصل
fairground	ملاهى	vinegar	خل
lantern	فانوس	sacrifice	يضحى
Hajj pilgrimage	موسم الحج	chilli	فلفل حار
sleeve	كُم	buttons	أزرار
jewelry	مجوهرات	galabeya	جلابية
ful medames	فول مدمس	sailor	بحار

Language

The Present Simple Tense

Subj. + inf. / inf. + s / es / ies

- Men and women often wear the galabeya.
- She lives in a big apartment.

The Present Continuous Tense

Subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing

- He is singing a song.
- Today, I'm talking to Dr Samir.

Am / Is / Are + subj. الفاعل + inf. + ing ... ?

Wh-word + is / are + subj. + inf. + ing ... ?

- What are they wearing now ?
- Is he eating a cake? – Yes, he is.

Test 3 on Unit 8

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hawawshi is ....
   a. terrible   b. cold   c. bad   d. delicious
2. Hawawshi is made with bread and beef or ....
   a. duck   b. chicken   c. carrots   d. lamb
3. The meat is cooked with ...., herbs, and spices.
   a. onion   b. tomato sauce   c. beans   d. garlic
4. The bread is pressed together around the .... to make hawawshi.
   a. herbs   b. meat   c. onions   d. spices

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

candle - lantern - festival - stuck

Jana : Hello, Nehal.
Nehal : Hello, Jana. Have you ever made a (1) .... for Ramadan ?
Jana : Yes. This year for Ramadan, I made a special lantern.
Nehal : How did you make it ?
Jana : I washed a glass jar and (2) .... some colored paper on the side.
Nehal : Did your mom help you ?
Jana : Yes, she gave me a small electric (3) .... to put inside.
Nehal : It's a good idea to light it at night.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of <u>delicious</u> food! Last year, my mom made Kunafa, with mango and cream. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar! We quickly cleaned up the mess and then finished cooking. That night, there were lots of different things to eat, but the kunafa was my favorite!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about "......................... ".
   a. Eid   b. Ramadan
   c. Christmas   d. Sham El-Nessim
2. The underlined word "<u>delicious</u>" means ....
   a. hot   b. terrible   c. bad   d. yummy
3. I was helping Mom in the kitchen and I .... the sugar.
   a. heated   b. bought   c. threw   d. dropped

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Who made Kunafa ? ....
5. When did they have a meal in Ramadan ? ....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his grandma's phone.
2. Anissa's dad works at the restaurant.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mariam is one of Dalia's ....
   a. aunts b. cousins c. friends d. neighbors
2. Amir explained his ideas to his ....
   a. mom b. dad c. grandpa d. grandma

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The children usually .... games in the park on the weekend.
   a. plays b. play c. to play d. playing
2. How .... Dina and Alaa celebrating Sham El-Nessim ?
   a. do b. does c. is d. are
3. Are Adam and Eyad .... computer games ?
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. played
4. White .... a good color to wear in hot weather.
   a. are b. am c. is d. be
5. What .... you doing, Hazem ?
   a. is b. was c. are d. do

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sometimes - salad - with - We - hawawshi - eat. ....
2. are - wearing - What - today - you ? ....
3. important - Eid Al-Adha - Islamic - a very - festival - is. ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Traditional dishes

Guiding elements :

- layers
- beans
- beef
- tomato sauce

....

....

....

....

Test 4 on Unit 8

Collected From Governorates Examinations
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Laila is my ....
   a. sister b. friend c. mother d. cousin
2. She lives in a house near us in ....
   a. Cairo b. Tanta c. Giza d. London
3. She is good at ....
   a. school b. zoo c. shop d. park
4. She goes to school at .... o'clock every day.
   a. five b. six c. seven d. eight

(Cairo - Heliopolis 2023)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

spring - paint - traditional - fall

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of (1) .... and it is very old. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different (2) .... food, often until sunset. We also (3) .... and decorate eggs in different colors. (Ismailia - Fayed 2023)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Mona lives in Luxor with her family. Today, she is celebrating Eid Al Fitr. She wears her best dress and <u>new</u> shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursday, but today is a holiday. Grandpa and grandma sit in the living room. Her brother Ahmed gives his grandparents some special cakes. Eid Al Fitr is Mona's favorite festival.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mona lives in .... with her family.
   a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Giza d. Aswan
2. .... is Mona's favorite festival.
   a. Eid Al-Fitr b. Eid Al-Adha c. Spring d. Ramadan
3. The underlined word "<u>new</u>" is the opposite of ....
   a. modern b. good c. old d. nice

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does Ahmed give to his grandparents?

   ....

5. What does Mona wear at Eid Al Fitr?

   ....

(Giza - Dokki 2023)

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir couldn't see the Nile from the roof. ☐
2. There was a plastic bag around seagull's leg. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir's .... was on the table.
   a. phone b. bag c. tablet d. bottle
2. Amir helped his .... hang up the clothes.
   a. grandpa b. dad c. mom d. grandma

(Aswan - Edfu 2023)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Today, we are .... about our favorite food. (Cairo – Amreya 2023)
   a. talked b. talking c. talks d. talk
2. Dina's mom .... in the office every day. (Aswan - Edfu 2023)
   a. work b. working c. works d. to work
3. I sometimes .... a bus to school. (Cairo - El Marg 2023)
   a. taking b. take c. are taking d. takes
4. They're .... video games at the moment. (Beni Suef - Beba 2023)
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. played
5. He is .... in the sea. (Giza – October 2023)
   a. swimming b. swam c. swim d. swims

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. playing – are – We – now – a board game. (Luxor – Esna 2023)

   ....

2. doesn't – dish – Which – meat – any – have ? (Menoufia – Birket El Sabaa 2023)

   ....

3. dish – favorite – My – ful - is - medames. (Assiut – Sidfa 2022)

   ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A visit to Egypt

Guiding elements :

- fantastic country
- Luxor
- River Nile
- friendly

(Gharbia - Basyon 2023)

....

....

....

....

Unit 9

Our culture

ثقافتنا

Aims of Unit Nine : الأهداف العامة للوحدة التاسعة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read about my cultural heritage.
  - اقرأ عن تراثي الثقافي.
- read a story about cultural artifacts.
  - اقرأ قصة عن القطع الأثرية الثقافية.
- revise past simple verbs.
  - أراجع الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط.
- form and use past continuous verbs.
  - أكون واستخدم الأفعال في زمن الماضي المستمر.
- listen to information about tourism and archaeology.
  - استمع إلى معلومات عن السياحة وعلم الآثار.
- learn about and draw bar charts.
  - اتعلم عن مخططات الرسم البياني ورسمها.
- write notes for an object in a museum.
  - اكتب ملاحظات عن قطعة أثرية في المتحف.
- write a report about an archaeological site.
  - اكتب تقرير عن موقع أثري.

Lesson 1

▸ What is heritage ?



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

heritage	تراث / ميراث	identity	هوية
temple	معبد	agriculture = farming	زراعة
calendar	تقويم	archaeologist	عالم آثار
civilization	حضارة	sites	مواقع
harvesting season	موسم الحصاد	flooding season	موسم الفيضان
growing season	موسم الزراعة	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة

• Extra vocabulary

system	نظام	fertile	خصبة / مثمرة
growth	ازدهار / نمو	crops	محاصيل
culture	ثقافة	historical	تاريخي
historian	مؤرخ	irrigation	ري
field	حقل	monuments	آثار
unique art	فن فريد من نوعه (فن مميز)	traditions	تقاليد

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
develop	يتطور	developed	connect	يتصل	connected
include	يشمل	included	farm	يزرع	farmed
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	store	يُخزن	stored
flood	يفيض	flooded	explore	يستكشف	explored

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come from	يأتي من	led to	أدى إلى
proud of	فخور بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
full of	ملئ بـ	went away	رحل - ذهب بعيدًا

⭐ **Read and identify this definition.**

تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
Heritage	is what people in a country have done هو ما فعله الناس في بلد ما

★ Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

The Rosetta Stone is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other languages that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics ! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient Egypt.

حجر رشيد هو قطعة أثرية مميزة، ساعد الناس على فهم الكتابه الهيروغليفية. كانت تحتوى على نفس الكلمات بلغتين أخرتين، يمكن للناس قراءتها لذلك استخدموها لترجمة الهيروغليفية! هذه احدى الطرق التى علمتنا عن الحياة فى مصر القديمة.

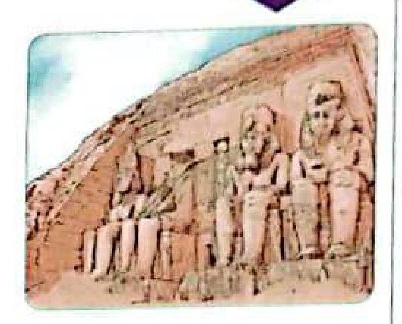
II Listening and Reading

★ Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

My heritage تراثى



A country's **heritage**[1] is an important part of its **identity**[2]. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing **temples**[3] and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed **agriculture**[4] and some of the first **calendars**[5]. **Archaeologists**[6] have learned lots of interesting things about the **civilization**[7] of ancient Egypt by exploring **historical sites**[8] at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing ? I'm very proud of my heritage.

[1] تراث
[2] هوية
[3] معابد
[4] زراعة
[5] تقويم
[6] علماء آثار
[7] حضارة
[8] مواقع أثرية / تاريخية

تراث الدولة جزء مهم من هويتها. جميع البلدان لها تراثها الخاص، وهو يأتى من تاريخها وتقاليدها. يشمل التراث الفن والمبانى وقطع أثرية من الماضى، أو الأشياء مثل الطعام، الموسيقى والرقص. بنى الناس فى مصر القديمة العديد من المعابد الرائعة والآثار، وهذا جزء مهم من تراثنا. كما طوروا الزراعة وبعض التقاويم الأولى. لقد علم/عرف علماء الآثار الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام حول حضارة مصر القديمة من خلال استكشاف المواقع التاريخية فى أماكن مثل أبو سمبل، والأقصر والجيزة. أنا مهتم جدًا بتراث مصر وأستمتع بالتعرف عليه. أزور المتاحف مع والداى للتعرف على الأشياء التى فعلها الناس فى الماضى. على سبيل المثال، هل تعلم أن القدماء المصريين كانوا من أوائل الحضارات التى طورت نظامًا للكتابة ؟ أنا فخور جدًا بتراثى.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What did people in ancient Egypt build ?
- They built many amazing temples and monuments.

Practice 2. What's a country's heritage ?

....

 **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

How do farmers use the Nile today?

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

كيف يستخدم المزارعون النيل اليوم؟

الزراعة جزء مهم من تراث مصر أيضًا. اعتاد النيل أن يفيض كل عام، مما يجعل التربة أكثر خصوبة. هذا هو السبب في أن المصريين القدماء تمكنوا من زراعة الأرض وأدى ذلك إلى نمو الحضارة. كانت هناك ثلاثة مواسم للزراعة في مصر القديمة كانت جميعها مرتبطة بالنيل.

The three seasons of farming



The flooding season
موسم الفيضان

from June to September

من يونيو حتى سبتمبر

The fields were full of water for four months.

كانت الحقول تمتلئ بالمياه لمدة أربعة شهور.



The growing season
موسم الزراعة

from October to February

من أكتوبر إلى فبراير

The water went away and the soil was rich and fertile. Farmers planted lots of different crops.

كانت المياه تجف وتصبح التربة غنية وخصبة. قام المزارعون بزراعة الكثير من المحاصيل المختلفة.



The harvesting season
موسم الحصاد

from March to May

من مارس إلى مايو

Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely before the Nile flooded again.

قام المزارعون بحصاد المحاصيل وتخزينها بأمان قبل فيضان النيل مرة أخرى.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's ....
   a. heritage   b. games   c. temples   d. soil
2. The Nile used to flood every ....
   a. month   b. year   c. day   d. week
3. There were .... seasons of farming in ancient Egypt.
   a. four   b. two   c. three   d. five
4. Seasons were connected to the .... in ancient Egypt.
   a. Nile   b. soil   c. birds   d. roads

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. interested - Egypt's - very - I'm - in - heritage.

....

2. like to - you - sites - Which - would - visit ?

....

3. countries - their - All - have - own - heritage.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nader likes to learn .... computers.
   a. at   b. in   c. of   d. about
2. The Ancient Egyptians .... great heritage.
   a. has   b. is having   c. had   d. having
3. The heritage of any country comes .... its history and traditions.
   a. from   b. at   c. of   d. to
4. I'm proud .... my country.
   a. in   b. at   c. of   d. off
5. The fields were full .... water during the flood.
   a. in   b. of   c. at   d. about

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

water - away - flooded - fertile

The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River Nile. Every year, the Nile (1) .... during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of (2) .... After the flood, water went away and the soil was (3) .... and good for farming.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past. People in **ancient** Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments. They also developed agriculture and some calendars. Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "A ....".
   a. country's agriculture b. country's heritage
   c. monument d. calendar
2. The underlined word "**ancient**" is the opposite of ....
   a. old b. classic c. modern d. huge
3. Heritage includes art, ... and objects from the past.
   a. rivers b. roads c. buildings d. phones

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What are the famous sites mentioned in the text ?

....

5. The Ancient Egyptians had great heritage. Give two examples.

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Agriculture in ancient Egypt

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • flood • soil • civilization • seasons • the Nile

....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 2 ▶ An Ancient Game

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

counter	عداد	senet game	لعبة سينيت
artifacts	قطع أثرية	ordinary	عادى / مألوف

• Extra vocabulary

on the top	على القمة	rich	غنى	walk away	يبتعد
winner	فائز	board game	لعبة لوحية	hill	تل
information	معلومات	tomb	مقبرة	archaeologist	عالم آثار

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.



Akil often helped his dad look after their goats. One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw his friend Ottah, and **waved**[1] at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.

"Look, Akil! My dad made me a **game**[2]!" He showed Akil a long wooden box with squares on the top. The box had beautiful pictures on the side. Next, he took out some **counters**[3] from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short.

"That looks fun! What do we have to do?" said Akil.

"We have to move the counters and see how far we can move. The **winner**[4] is the first to get all their counters off the board. Let's play!" Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree. Then Akil looked up. "Oh no!" he said.

"Ottah, where are my goats?"

Ottah and Akil looked around. The goats were walking away over a small hill. "Look, there they are!" Akil said. "Quick! We have to get them!"

[1] لوّح
[2] لعبة
[3] عدادات
[4] الفائز

غالبًا ما كان يساعد عقيل والده في رعاية ماعزهم. ذات يوم كان جالسًا تحت شجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وكان متعبًا. ثم رأى صديقه أوتاه ولوح له. كان أوتاه يحمل حقيبة، وبدا سعيدًا عندما رأى عقيل. انظر، عقيل ! صنع لي والدى لعبة ! أطلع عقيل على صندوق خشبي طويل به مربعات اعلاه. كان الصندوق يحتوى على صور جميلة على الجانب. بعد ذلك، أخرج بعض العدادات من حقيبته. سبعة عدادات كانت طويلة وسبعة قصيرة. قال عقيل هذا يبدو ممتعًا ! ماذا علينا أن نفعل ؟ يتعين علينا تحريك العدادات ونرى إلى أى مدى يمكننا التحرك. الفائز هو أول من يخرج كل العدادات من اللوحة. هيا بنا لنلعب! لعب أوتاه وعقيل بسعادة تحت الشجرة ثم نظر عقيل إلى الأعلى وقال : "أوه لا" أين ماعزى ؟" يا اوتاه. نظر أوتاه وعقيل حولهما. كانت الماعز تسير مبتعدة على تل صغير. قال عقيل : "انظر، ها هم." بسرعة ! علينا أن نحضرهم !"



Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



Sara was in the museum with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts. There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the information about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box.

"Mom, Dad, look at this!" she said.

"What is it?" asked Dad.

"It looks like an old senet game," said Mom.

"Look. The information says that it's 3,500 years old," said Sara. "That's amazing ! I wonder who used to play with it. Archaeologists found it in the desert near Luxor."

It says here that lots of people used to play senet: rich people and ordinary people," said Mom.

"Maybe children like me played with this game!" said Sara.

كانت سارة في المتحف مع والدتها وأبيها. كانوا ينظرون إلى القطع الأثرية المصرية. كان هناك الكثير من الأشياء القديمة جدًا وكانت سارة تقرأ المعلومات عن كل قطعة أثرية. أخيرًا، توقفت سارة أمام صندوق خشبي طويل.

قالت سارة : أمي ، أبي، انظروا إلى هذا. سأل ابي. "ما هذا؟" قالت أمي : "إنها تبدو وكأنها لعبة سنيت قديمة". قالت سارة : "انظروا، المعلومات تقول ان عمرها ٣٥٠٠ عام" ، هذا مذهل ! أتساءل من اعتاد ان يلعب بها. وجدها علماء الآثار في الصحراء بالقرب من الأقصر. تقول الأم "يقال أن الكثير من الناس اعتادوا أن يلعبوا لعبة السينيت: الأغنياء والناس عامة الشعب". قالت سارة "ربما لعب الأطفال مثلي بهذه اللعبة !".

III Writing Skill

Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

To order the events in a story, we use : **لترتيب أحداث في قصة نستخدم :**

first أولًا, next التالي, then ثم, and finally أخيرًا to put sentences in order in a story.

أولًا، والتالي، ثم، وأخيرًا لترتيب الجمل في القصة.

Did you know ?

Senet is the world's oldest board game. Archaeologists found a senet game in Tutankhamun's tomb !

- سينيت هي أقدم لعبة لوحية في العالم. وجد علماء الآثار لعبة سينيت في مقبرة توت عنخ أمون !





Remember

1. The Past Simple Tense ١. زمن الماضى البسيط

To talk about something that happened once in the past.

Usage

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ و انتهى فى الماضى.

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative (positive) statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل (غير المنتظم) / inf. + (d / ed / ied) للفعل (المنتظم)

wash → washed

buy → bought

- We cleaned our room yesterday.
- They went to the park last week.



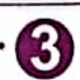
2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة .

- He didn't see the old box.
- They didn't play a game with their parents.

A Wh- question :

صيغة الاستفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط.



3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Question word + did + I / he / she / it / you / we / they + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- What did he see in the museum ?

B Yes / No question :

Did + subject فاعل + inf. .... ?

- Did you go to school ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

2. The Past Continuous Tense ٢. زمن الماضى المستمر

Usage To talk about an action that was in progress in the past.

• يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر لمدة معينة فى الماضى.



Affirmative statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + inf. + ing
We / You / They / اسم جمع + were + inf. + ing

▶ He was swimming in the sea at 5 pm yesterday evening.



Negative statements
الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wasn't + inf. + ing
We / You / They / اسم جمع + weren't + inf. + ing

▶ They weren't listening to music at 8 am yesterday morning.



Yes/No Question
السؤال بـ "هل"

Was + he / she / it / I / اسم مفرد + inf. + ing .... ?
Were + you / we / they / اسم جمع + inf. + ing .... ?

▶ Was she making a cake at 2 pm yesterday?

- Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.



Wh-Question
السؤال بأداة إستفهام

Question word + was / were + subject + inf. + ing ?

▶ What was he doing at 9 pm last night ?
▶ He was studying at 9 pm yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

at that moment yesterday / at [time] yesterday

▶ He was doing his homework at 7:00 yesterday.

When عندما

◀ نستخدم (when) لربط حدثين أحدهما كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر.

◀ يأتي زمن الماضي البسيط (past simple) بعد (When) ثم يتبعه زمن الماضي المستمر (past continuous) إذا جاءت في بداية الجملة.

When + past simple , past continuous

▶ When I arrived, my dad was watching the news.

◀ يسبق زمن الماضي المستمر (when) إذا كانت في منتصف الجملة ثم يتبعها زمن الماضي البسيط.

past continuous + when + past simple

▶ He was looking after his father's goats when he saw his friend.

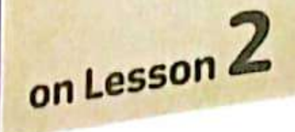


Pop Quiz on Language

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. He was .... his school bag on his way to school.
   a. carry   b. carries   c. carrying   d. to carry
2. The goats .... walking away over a small hill.
   a. was   b. were   c. is   d. has
3. Mona and Salma were .... a museum.
   a. visits   b. visit   c. visiting   d. visited
4. The children .... their homework when I got home.
   a. done   b. did   c. does   d. were doing
5. My parents .... the news when I arrived home.
   a. watched   b. watch   c. were watching   d. watching
6. We were reading in the library .... the bell rang.
   a. who   b. how   c. what   d. when
7. I .... doing my homework when my father came.
   a. have   b. was   c. were   d. are
8. They .... at the park last weekend.
   a. was   b. were   c. has   d. are
9. My sister .... a film with her friends last Monday.
   a. watch   b. watched   c. watching   d. watches
10. Yesterday, I .... a kite with my friends.
   a. flying   b. flies   c. flew   d. fly

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Akil often helped his dad look after their ....
   a. horses b. goats c. sheep d. cows
2. Ottah looked .... when he saw Akil.
   a. sad b. tired c. happy d. hot
3. Ottah showed Akil a long .... box.
   a. wooden b. golden c. paper d. plastic
4. The box had beautiful .... on the side.
   a. squares b. pictures c. circles d. bags

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. artifacts - were - Egyptian - at - They - looking.
   ....
2. board - oldest - What's - game - the world's ?
   ....
3. found - near - Archaeologists - a statue - Luxor .
   ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When I arrived home, my dad .... the garden.
   a. watered b. watering c. waters d. is watering
2. What .... at eight o'clock last night ?
   a. did you do b. were you doing c. are you doing d. you were doing
3. I was .... in the library when I saw Fares.
   a. study b. studies c. studying d. studied
4. Dina and Ola .... visiting a museum.
   a. was b. were c. is d. am
5. When the lights .... out, we were playing games.
   a. go b. went c. going d. are going

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

brochure – archaeologists - wife - find

Alaa and her parents were looking at the Egyptian artifacts in the museum. Alaa was reading some information to her parents from the museum (1) .... She learned that (2) .... found a senet game in an Egyptian tomb. Alaa wanted to (3) .... out more, so she turned on her phone and started to look online.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The Egyptian civilization is very famous. Egypt has a long history. People started to live near the Nile. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows- through the deserts of Africa. One pharaoh called Mena, joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about "..................".
   a. Natural resources b. History of Egypt
   c. Invertebrates d. Egyptian crafts
2. The Nile flows in the .... of Egypt.
   a. east b. west c. north d. south
3. The underlined word "started" means ....
   a. bought b. made c. began d. finished

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Who joined the two parts in Egypt?

....

5. What were the two separate parts of Egypt?

....

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about visiting a museum to your friend. Your friend's name is Amr. Your name is Adam and your email address is adam@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amrfawzi@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

• artifacts • information • senet game • archaeologists

New Message

From: ____________________

To: ____________________

Subject: ____________________

....

....

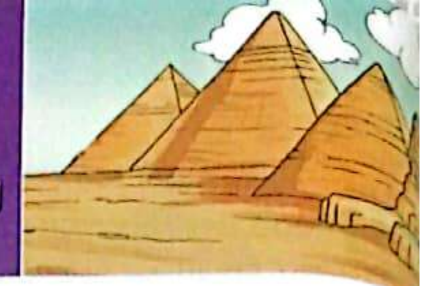
....

....

....

Lesson 3

▶ Tourism and archaeology



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


axe فأس


mask قناع


vase زهرية


perfume عطر

Extra vocabulary

tourist	سائح	archaeological	أثرى
capital city	عاصمة	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
cruise	رحلة بحرية / نهرية	builder	عامل بناء / معمارى
port city	مدينة ساحلية	Step Pyramid	الهرم المدرج
Roman theater	المسرح الرومانى	archaeology	علم الآثار
tool	أداة	pottery	فخار
structures	هياكل - مبانى	engraving	نقش
pots	أوانى	sharp knife	سكين حاد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
bury	يدفن	buried	find out	يكتشف	found out
carve	ينحت / ينقش	carved	tell	يخبر	told
decorate	يزين	decorated	hold	يمسك	held

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

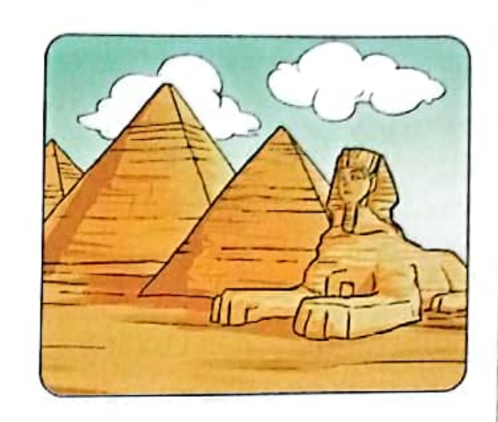
Word	Definition	
bury	put underground	يضع تحت الأرض
cruise	a holiday in a ship	رحلة بالسفينة
carve	cut using a sharp knife or axe	يقطع باستخدام سكين حاد أو فأس



Look, read and learn.

انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Where can you see engravings ?



Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume. So, what are some of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit ?

أين يمكنك رؤية النقوش ؟

يزور الكثير من الناس مصر كل عام بسبب المواقع الأثرية المذهلة. يرغب السائحين فى رؤية المعالم الأثرية الكبيرة والأهرامات والمعابد. إنه لأمر مذهل أن نعتقد أن قدماء المصريون كانوا يبنون هذه المبانى المذهلة منذ أكثر من ٤٠٠٠ عام، عندما كانت الحضارات فى البلدان الأخرى أبسط بكثير. وجد علماء الآثار الكثير من القطع الأثرية مثل الأدوات والفخار والمزهريات والأقنعة. يمكن أن تخبرنا هذه الأشياء عن كيف عاش الناس فى مصر القديمة. على سبيل المثال، نحن نعلم أن قدماء المصريون استخدموا الكثير من الفخار. كانوا يصنعون مزهريات من الفخار، وفى بعض الأحيان يزينوها. استخدموها لحمل الماء والطعام. كما صنعوا أوانى صغيرة للزيت أو العطور. إذن، ماهى بعض المواقع الأثرية الأكثر شهرة التى يرغب السائحون فى زيارتها ؟

Giza

Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

الجيزة : فى بعض الأحيان عندما يفكر الناس فى مصر، فإنهم يفكرون فى الأهرامات وأبو الهول فى الجيزة. هم مشهورون فى جميع أنحاء العالم. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن قدماء المصريين بنوا تمثال أبو الهول لحماية الأهرامات. قاموا بنحته من قطعة كبيرة من الحجر.

Saqqara

This is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.

سقارة : هذا واحد من أكبر المواقع فى مصر. يوجد به العديد من المقابر ومن بينها أحد أقدم الأهرامات فى مصر. صنعه البناة للملك زوسر فى حوالى ٢٦٣٠ قبل الميلاد. إنه الهرم المدرج وهو من أقدم المعالم الحجرية.

Alexandria

There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

الإسكندرية : هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن رؤيتها في هذه المدينة الساحلية، بما في ذلك المسرح الروماني، المدينة القديمة، وقلعة قايتباي. كانت الإسكندرية عاصمة مصر، وكان بها أول مكتبة للأسكندرية التي اشتهرت في جميع أنحاء العالم.

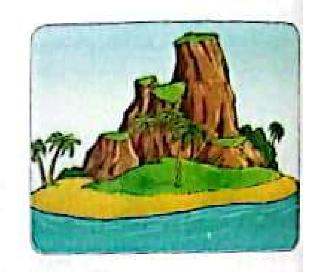
Luxor

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit ?

الأقصر: يزور العديد من السائحين مدينة الأقصر من خلال رحلة نيلية. يمكنهم رؤية معبد الكرنك ووادي الملوك. لقد دفن المصريون القدماء ملوكهم وملكاتهم هنا لآلاف السنين. تستطيع أن ترى الكثير من اللوحات والنقوش في المعابد. هناك الكثير من الأشياء المدهشة الأخرى التي يمكن رؤيتها في مصر. ماذا تود أن تزور؟

Audioscript

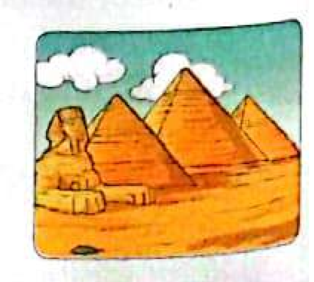

: We went into the desert to see these very old buildings in the oasis. This was an important place for people who traveled in the desert. Now, tourists can stay in hotels there.




: There are lots of old temples here, and they are huge. It is next to the Nile. There are lots of paintings and engravings on the stone inside the monuments.




: We saw these amazing monuments at Giza. There are three pyramids here, and the first one was started around 2550 BCE. They are made of lots of very big stones.



General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You can see a/an .... theatre in Alexandria.
   a. French   b. American   c. Roman   d. Chinese
2. Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt.
   a. village   b. capital   c. airport   d. port
3. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River ....
   a. cruise   b. flight   c. railway   d. roads
4. Tourists can see the .... of Karnak in Luxor.
   a. Museum   b. Cinema   c. Temple   d. Theatre

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

protect – ancient – carved – famous

Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are (1) .... all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to (2) .... the Pyramids. They (3) .... it from one huge piece of stone.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the <u>large</u> monuments, pyramids, and temples. Saqqara is one of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt which builders made for King Djoser. Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This text is mainly about " .... in Egypt".
   a. Clay   b. Ancient Food
   c. Famous sites   d. Festivals
2. The underlined word "**large**" can be replaced with " .... ".
   a. small   b. little   c. tiny   d. huge
3. Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from ....
   a. wood   b. clay   c. glass   d. metal

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What do tourists want to see in Egypt ?

....

5. Who was the oldest pyramid in Egypt built for ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are lots .... things to see in Alexandria.
   a. in b. down c. of d. about
2. Alexandria is famous .... its library.
   a. in b. of c. for d. at
3. We .... a nice visit to the Pyramids last week.
   a. had b. have c. are d. were
4. Many tourists .... to visit Egypt every year.
   a. likes b. liked c. like d. to like
5. The Ancient Egyptians .... many amazing things.
   a. make b. makes c. making d. made

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. archaeological - There're - amazing - sites - Egypt - in.

....

2. tourists - travel to - Luxor - How - do ?

....

3. Egyptians - lots - Ancient - of - used - pottery.

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Amazing sites in Egypt

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- tourists
- Sphinx
- Saqqara
- Alexandria

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4

▶ CLIL : Math



I Vocabulary

project	مشروع	vertical	رأسى / عمودى
exhibition	معرض	line	خط
bar chart	شريط الرسم البيانى	x-axis	المحور السينى
horizontal	أفقى	y-axis	المحور الصادى

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

What does Adam have to show ? ماذا يجب على آدم أن يظهر؟

Adam was doing his school project. "This is a really interesting project, Mom !" he said.
"What do you have to do ?" she asked.
"We're learning about International Museum Day. We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things, and we have to show which is the most popular exhibition."
"OK, so what are you going to put in your museum ?" Mom asked.
"Let me think," said Adam. "Maybe a room about art, and one about games. Can you help me to plan it ?"
"OK ! Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler !" said Mom.

كان آدم يقوم بمشروع مدرسته. هو قال : هذا مشروع مثير للاهتمام حقًا يا أمى ! سألت : ماذا عليك أن تفعل ؟ نحن نتعلم عن يوم المتحف العالمى. علينا أن نصمم متحفًا جديدًا ونقول ما بداخله. هناك العديد من المعارض المختلفة التى تعرض أشياء مختلفة، وعلينا أن نوضح ما أكثر المعارض شهرة. سألت الأم "حسنًا، ما الذى ستضعه فى متحفك ؟" قال آدم : "دعينى أفكر، ربما غرفة عن الفن وأخرى عن الألعاب. هل بمكنك مساعدتى فى التخطيط لها ؟ قالت الأم : "نعم ! دعنا نحضر ورقتك وأقلامك الملونة ومسطرة !

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

What is an axis ? ما هو المحور؟

Adam wanted to show the most popular exhibition in his museum. He used a bar chart to show how many people visited the exhibitions. The line across the bottom is called the x-axis. It is horizontal. The x-axis here shows the different exhibitions. The y-axis is the line that goes up. It is vertical. The y-axis here shows the number of visitors on one day in July.

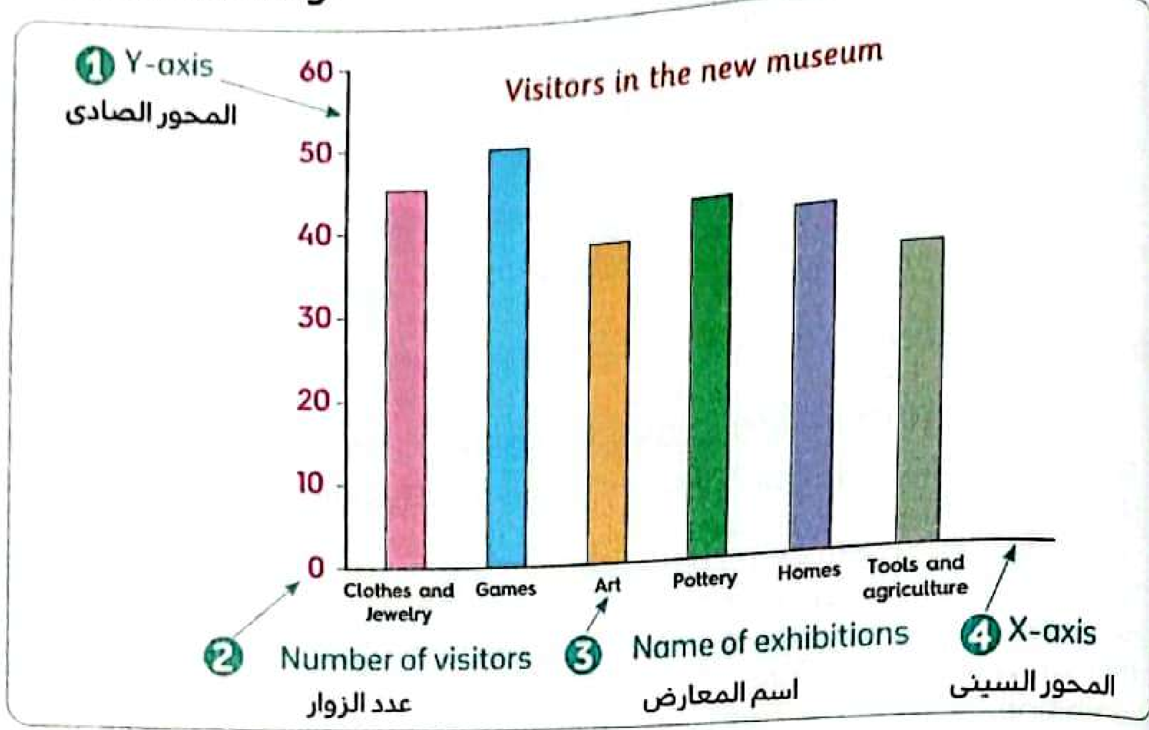


أراد آدم أن يعرض أكثر المعارض شهرة فى متحفه. استخدم مخطط رسم بيانى لإظهار عدد الأشخاص الذين زاروا المعارض. يسمى الخط الموجود فى الجزء السفلى بالمحور السينى. إنه أفقى. المحور السينى هنا يعرض المعارض المختلفة. المحور الصادى هو الخط الذى يرتفع لأعلى. إنه رأسى. يظهر المحور الصادى هنا عدد الزوار فى يوم واحد من شهر يوليو.



ظر ونعرف.

Look and identify.

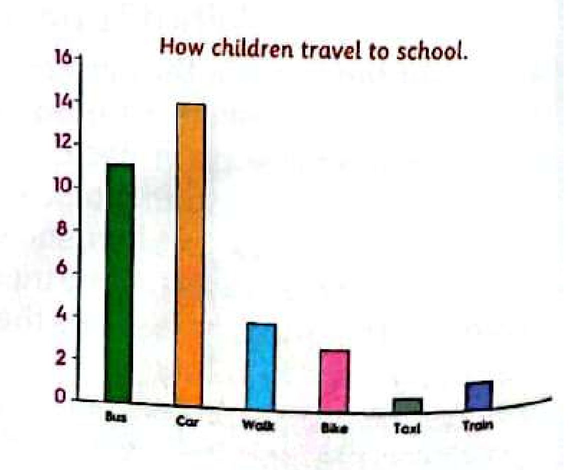


- The line that goes across is horizontal. It's called the "X-axis".
- The line that goes up is vertical. It is called the "Y - axis".

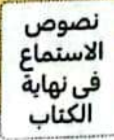
Pop Quiz on Math

- **Look at the bar chart and answer the questions.**

1. The bar chart shows how children travel to school each day. Can you label the vertical and horizontal lines ? ....
2. How many children travel to school by bus ? ....
3. Do any children take a taxi to school ? ....
4. Which form of transportation do most children use ? ....
5. Which form of transportation do you use for school ? ....



General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adam and his friends want to do their .... project.
   a. school b. room c. home d. museum
2. They learn about .... Museum Day.
   a. Exhibition b. School c. International d. Pyramid
3. There are many different .... that show different things.
   a. games b. pictures c. friends d. exhibitions
4. In their museum, they are going to put a room about ....
   a. art b. history c. science d. music

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a new - have - to - We - museum - design.

....

2. to plan - it - me - Can - help - you ?

....

3. children - any - Do - a taxi - take ?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

room - design - road - project

Eyad : What are you doing, Hamza ?
Hamza : I'm doing my school [1] ....
Eyad : What do you have to do ?
Hamza : I have to [2] .... a new museum.
Eyad : What are you going to put in your museum ?
Hamza : Maybe a [3] .... about art, and one about games.
Eyad : I can help you to plan it.
Hamza : Thank you, Eyad.




Lessons **5 & 6**

- Writing
- Project : Report

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

limestone	الحجر الجيرى	statue	تمثال
death	الموت	Pharaoh	فرعون

• Extra vocabulary

Amenhotep III	امنحوتب الثالث	wife	زوجة
ancient	قديم	gold	ذهب
wide	واسع / عريض	daughter	ابنة
Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك	solar boat	قارب شمسى
person	شخص	temple	معبد

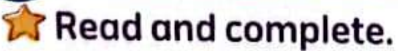
• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يصدق/ يعتقد	believed	give	يعطى	gave
belong	ينتمى	belonged	know	يعرف	knew

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

across the skies	عبر السماوات	in 2000 BCE	فى عام ٢٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد
belong to	تنتمى إلى	made of	مصنوع من





Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

Read and complete.

Kings - statues - made - limestone - masks

1. This statue is made of ....
2. We visited the Valley of the .... last weekend.
3. You can see a lot of .... in the museum.
4. My mother's necklace is .... of gold.
5. We put .... on our faces in the party.

Did you know ?
The Grand Egyptian Museum has more than 5,000 items that belonged to the Pharaoh Tutankhamun.
يضم المتحف المصرى الكبير أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ قطعة تخص الفرعون توت عنخ آمون



II Reading



Read the fact files and learn. اقرأ ملفات الحقيقة وتعلم.

1 Statue of Amenhotep III

What is it ? ما هذا ؟

the statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters
تمثال أمنحوتب الثالث، زوجته تي وبناتهم الثلاثة

How old is it ? كم عمره؟
about 3,400 years old حوالى ٣٤٠٠ سنة

What is it made of ? مما هو مصنوع؟
limestone الحجر الجيرى

How big is it ? كم حجمه؟
7 meters tall, 4.4 meters wide طوله ٧ أمتار، وعرضه ٤,٤ متر

Where is it from ? من أين هو؟
Luxor الأقصر



This is the largest statue of a family group in Egypt.
هذا هو أكبر تمثال لمجموعة عائلية فى مصر.

2 Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat

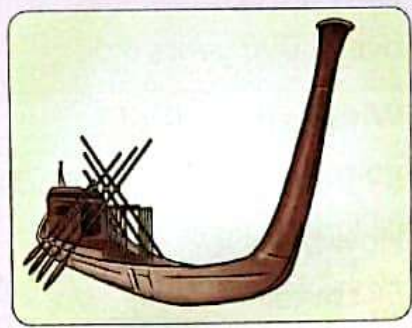
What is it ? ما هذا؟
a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's tomb
وجد قارب خشبى فى مقبرة الفرعون خوفو

How old is it ? كم عمره؟
about 4,600 years old حوالى ٤٦٠٠ سنة

What is it made of ? مما هو مصنوع؟
wood خشب

How big is it ? كم حجمه؟
42 meters long طوله ٤٢ متر

Where is it from ? من أين هو؟
Giza الجيزة



It is called a solar boat because ancient Egyptians believed that it would take the person across the skies after death.
يطلق عليه اسم القارب الشمسى لأن القدماء المصريين اعتقدوا أنه سيأخذ الإنسان عبر السموات بعد الموت.

3 Statue of Bastet

What is it ?	ما هذا؟
A statue of Bastet	تمثال باستيت
How old is it ?	كم عمره؟
It is 2,500 years old	إنه من ٢٥٠٠ سنة
What is it made of ?	مما هو مصنوع؟
It is made of limestone	إنه مصنوع من الحجر الجيري
How big is it ?	كم حجمه؟
It is 30 centimeters tall	طوله ٣٠ سنتيمتر
Where is it from ?	من أين هو؟
Alexandria	الإسكندرية



A statue of Bastet

تمثال باستيت

4 Tutankhamun's mask

What is it ?	ما هذا؟
a gold mask	قناع ذهبي
How old is it ?	كم عمره؟
over 3,000 years old	اكثر من ٣٠٠٠ سنة
What is it made of ?	مما هو مصنوع؟
gold	ذهب
How big is it ?	كم حجمه؟
54 cm tall	طوله ٥٤ سنتيمتر
Where is it from ?	من أين هو؟
The Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك



This has traveled all over the world to other museums, because it is very important.

لقد سافر إلى جميع أنحاء العالم إلى متاحف أخرى، لأنه مهم للغاية.

5 Statue of Khufu



The statue shows the pharaoh sitting on a throne. It's the smallest piece of Egyptian royal sculpture.

يوضح التمثال الفرعون جالس على العرش. إنه أصغر قطعة نحت ملكية.

What is it ?
the statue of Khufu
ما هذا ؟
تمثال خوفو

How old is it ?
about 4,400 years old
كم عمره ؟
حوالى ٤٤٠٠ سنة

What is it made of ?
Ivory
مما هو مصنوع ؟
العاج

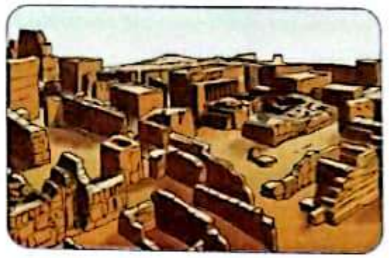
How big is it ?
7.5 cm tall
كم حجمه ؟
طوله ٧،٥ سنتيمتر

Where is it from ?
Abydos
من أين هو ؟
أبيدوس

Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.





Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site. This is a very old city and nobody knew it was there.

كان علماء الآثار يعملون فى الصحراء عندما وجدوا موقعًا رائعًا. هذه مدينة قديمة جدًا، ولم يعلم أحد بوجودها.

III Writing skill

Writing notes for an object in a museum

كيفية إعطاء معلومات عن قطعة أثرية فى المتحف

When you give information :

عند إعطاء معلومات :

1. You have to answer questions such as "Who, What, Where and How".
   - عليك أن تجيب على أسئلة مثل (من، ماذا، أين وكيف).
2. You give facts, not opinions.
   - تقدم حقائق وليس آراء.
3. Facts can include names, dates and places.
   - يمكن أن تشتمل هذه الحقائق على أسماء، تواريخ، أماكن.
4. Give extra information to add more interest.
   - أعطى معلومات إضافية لإضافة المزيد من الاهتمام.

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

• **1** **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.**

mask - design - gold - old

Salma : What's this, Lara ?
Lara : It's Tutankhamun's (1) ....
Salma : What is the mask made of ?
Lara : It's made of (2) ....
Salma : How big is it ?
Lara : It's 54 cm tall.
Salma : How (3) .... is it ?
Lara : It's over 3,000 years old.

• **2** **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. made - This statue - is - ivory - of.
....
2. did - find - the archaeologists - When - site - this ?
....
3. statue of - is - What - of - made - Khufu ?
....

• **3** **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We .... working in the desert when we found a tomb.
a. were b. are c. was d. is
2. They were .... for old artifacts when they found a temple.
a. look b. looked c. looking d. looks
3. I was traveling in the desert when I .... an ancient city.
a. discovering b. discovered c. discovers d. discover
4. What did they .... in the desert last week ?
a. finds b. found c. find d. to find
5. This statue is .... of limestone.
a. make b. makes c. made d. to making

• **4** **Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.**

The statue of Amenhotep III

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :
• limestone • 7 meters tall • Luxor • 3,400 years old

....
....
....
....
....



Skills

UNIT 9

1 Reading comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استخراج بعض المعلومات الموجودة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Luxor is a beautiful governorate. Many tourists visit Luxor from a River Nile cruise. They can see the temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.

شرح الحل تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

1. Where did ancient Egyptians bury their kings and queens ?
- In the Valley of the Kings.

2. What things can you see in the temple ?
- You can see lots of paintings and engravings.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage and it comes from its history and traditions.

Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing monuments. This is an important part of our heritage.

1. Where does heritage come from ?

....

2. What did ancient Egyptians build ?

....

Skills 2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [هرم سقارة] و [الزراعة فى مصر القديمة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Saqqara	▶ Write the meaning : مقابر .... عمال بناء .... مواقع أثرية .... تاريخ .... هرم مدرج .... اقدم	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. Saqqara is one of the biggest ....in Egypt. 2.Saqqara has many.................... , including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. 3. .... made this for King Djoser. 4. Saqqara is the.................... .	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Saqqara" ....
Agriculture in ancient Egypt	يفيض .... محاصيل .... فصول السنة.............................. تراث .... تربة زراعية .... خصب	1. Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's.................... . 2. The Nile used to .... every year. 3. The flood made the soil more .... 4. There were three .... of farming in ancient Egypt.	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "Agriculture in ancient Egypt" ....



3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My heritage	identity	A country's heritage is an important part of its identity.
	countries	All countries have their own heritage.
	history - traditions	A heritage comes from its history and traditions.
	art - the past	Heritage includes art, buildings and objects from the past.
	proud of	I'm very proud of my heritage.
Agriculture	important - heritage	Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage.
	flood	The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile.
	farm	This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land.
	civilization	It led to a growth in civilization.
	seasons	There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt.
Saqqara	sites	Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt.
	tombs	Saqqara has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt.
	King Djoser	Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2,630 BCE.
	Step Pyramid	The Ancient Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for King Djoser.
	monuments	The Step Pyramid is one of the oldest stone monuments.
Alexandria	port	Alexandria is a port city.
	Roman theater	Alexandria has a Roman theatre.
	capital city	Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.
	Library of Alexandria	The Library of Alexandria is famous all over the world.
Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat	a wooden boat	It is a wooden boat found in Khufu's tomb.
	solar boat	It is called a solar boat.
	4,600 years old	It is about 4,600 years old.
	wood	It is made of wood.
	Giza	It is from Giza.

Skills

4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Luxor

Luxor is a beautiful governorate.[1] Many tourists visit Luxor from a River Nile cruise.[2] They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.[3] Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years.[4] You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples.[5] There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.[6]

2 Egypt's heritage

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity.[7] All countries have their own heritage and it comes from its history and traditions.[8] Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing.[9] People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage.[10] They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars.[11] Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza.[12]

3 Giza

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites.[13] Giza is a beautiful governorate.[14] Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza.[15] They are famous all over the world.[16] Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids.[17] They carved it from one huge piece of stone.[18]

4 Statue of Amenhotep III

The statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters, is the largest statue of a family group in Egypt.[19] It is about 3,400 years old.[20] It is made of limestone.[21] It is 7 meters tall.[22] It is 4.4 meters wide.[23] It is from Luxor.[24]

Review on unit 9



مراجعة عامة على الوحدة التاسعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

oasis	واحة	engravings	نقوش
temple	معبد	perfume	عطر
agriculture	زراعة	vase	مزهرية
calendar	تقويم	board game	لعبة لوحية
mask	قناع	archaeologist	عالم اثار
tools	أدوات	artifacts	قطع اثرية
pottery	فخار	monuments	اثار
cruise	رحلة نهرية	king	ملك
statue	تمثال	Pharaoh	فرعون

Language

The Past Simple Tense

Subj. + التصريف الثانى للفعل (غير المنتظم) / Inf. + d / ed / ied

- She showed her mom a game.
- The farmer saw his goats walking away.

The Past Continuous Tense

Subj. + was / were + inf. + ing

- He was sitting under a tree.
- The children were playing a game.



Test 5 on Unit 9

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara was in the ....
   a. office　b. school　c. museum　d. park
2. They were looking at .... artifacts.
   a. Egyptian　b. Chinese　c. French　d. Italian
3. Sara was .... the information about each object.
   a. writing　b. reading　c. talking　d. drawing
4. Sara looked at an old .... game.
   a. senet　b. hockey　c. football　d. golf

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

Abydos - big - Valley - ivory

Ghada : What is Statue of Khufu made of ?
Hager : It's made of (1) ....
Ghada : How (2) .... is it ?
Hager : It's 7.5 centimeters tall.
Ghada : How old is it ?
Hager : It's over 4,400 years old.
Ghada : Where is it from ?
Hager : It is from (3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The Ancient Egyptians were interested in agriculture because of the River Nile. Every year, the Nile flooded during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from June to September. After the flood, water went away and the soil was fertile and good for farming. Then comes the growing season. It lasted from October to February. During this time, farmers planted their crops. They dug canals to carry water from the river to the fields. The third season is called harvesting season. During this time, farmers cut and **stored** their crops. It lasted from March to May.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is about " .... ".
   a. Egyptian dishes　b. Agriculture in ancient Egypt
   c. Tourism in Egypt　d. Importance of reading
2. The underlined word "**stored**" means " .... ".
   a. wasted　b. saved　c. cut　d. found
3. Farmers planted their crops after the .... season.
   a. drought　b. flooding　c. growing　d. rain

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What helped Ancient Egyptians farm the land ?

....

5. How long was the growing season?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Birds have their babies in a nest. ☐
2. Amir took the laundry up to the living room. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Seagulls live near the .... and eat fish.
   a. desert b. sea c. forest d. mountain
2. Anissa's dad works at the ....
   a. market b. hospital c. school d. home

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... in the desert when I saw something in the sand.
   a. was working b. were working
   c. worked d. work
2. They .... an old map to look for an ancient city.
   a. using b. uses c. to use d. used
3. What did Mona .... at the museum?
   a. see b. saw c. seeing d. sees
4. When my dad ...., my mom was watching the news.
   a. comes b. come c. came d. coming
5. The children were shouting when the teacher ....
   a. arrives b. arrive c. will arrive d. arrived

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egypt – every year – Many – visit – tourists.

....

2. artifact - oldest - the - is - Which?

....

3. doing - you - What - were - at 8 pm - yesterday?

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40)words using the following guiding elements.

Tutankhamun's mask

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- gold
- 3,000 years old
- 54 cm tall
- the Valley of the Kings

....

....

....

Test 6 on Unit 9

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Alexandria is one of the .... cities.
   a. biggest   b. smallest   c. oldest   d. cleanest
2. I .... in Alexandria.
   a. like   b. live   c. need   d. swim
3. It used to be the capital .... of Egypt.
   a. city   b. town   c. village   d. country
4. It had the first .... of Alexandria.
   a. beach   b. street   c. library   d. museum

[Sharkia - East Zagazig 2023]

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

carved - Pyramids - tourists - Giza

Mona : Where do you live ?
Noha : I live in (1) ....
Mona : Why do (2) .... visit Giza ?
Noha : To see the (3) ....
Mona : How did the ancient Egyptians build the Sphinx ?
Noha : They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

[Cairo - Matarya 2023]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I think Egypt is a great country to visit. You can visit the Pyramids of Giza. The Library of Alexandria, or the beautiful Temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so many things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can take a boat trip down the Nile or go camping in the desert or you can go scuba diving in the Red Sea. The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun! My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festival! We eat a delicious dessert called kunafa at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called kahk at Eid Al-Fitr !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Pyramids are at ....
   a. Cairo   b. Giza   c. Alexandria   d. Luxor
2. We take a boat trip down the ....
   a. Sea   b. Red Sea   c. Nile   d. Giza
3. We can have a .... in the park in Sham El-Nessim.
   a. scuba diving   b. picnic   c. flight   d. boat

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What temple can you visit in the Valley of the Kings ?

....

5. Which festival do people celebrate in spring ?

....

[Cairo - Helwan 2023]

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir lives in a village. ☐
2. Waleed asked his dad to stop using plastic bags. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The seagull is in ....
   a. car b. box c. trouble d. bottle
2. Anissa's dad asks the .... to help.
   a. teachers b. fishermen c. drivers d. engineers

[Kafr El-Sheikh - Desouk 2023]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... our room yesterday. [Alexandria - West 2023]
   a. clean b. cleans c. cleaning d. cleaned
2. I .... studying in the library when I saw Fares. [Menia - Maghagha 2023]
   a. were b. is c. was d. are
3. Children were .... a game. [Sharkia - 10th of Ramadan 2023]
   a. play b. played c. playing d. plays
4. I was walking in the street when I .... my best friend. [Giza - Dokki 2023]
   a. meet b. met c. meets d. meeting
5. What .... you doing at 8 pm last night ? [Sharkia - East Zagazig 2023]
   a. are b. were c. is d. was

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - country - Egypt - to visit - a fantastic. [Sharkia - East Zagazig 2023]

....

2. to - places - are - There - beautiful - visit. [Beni Suef 2023]

....

3. amazing - There - places - are - in Luxor. [Alexandria - West 2023]

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40)words using the following guiding elements.

A visit to Alexandria

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• visited • Qaitbay Citadel • journey [Sharkia - Diarb Negm 2023]

....

....

....

....

Review 3 General Revision on Units 7,8&9

I Vocabulary

• Unit 7

polar	قطبي	rural	ريفي / قروي	tidal energy	طاقة المد والجذر
desert	صحراء	air pollution	تلوث الهواء	geothermal energy	الطاقة الحرارية الأرضية
mountainous	جبلي	coal	فحم	wind energy	طاقة الرياح
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	water pollution	تلوث المياه	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
urban	حضري	waterwheel	ساقية		

• Unit 8

meal	وجبة	hizam = belt = sash	حزام	sacrifice	يضحي
olive oil	زيت زيتون	buttons	أزرار	spring	فصل الربيع
garlic	ثوم	galabeya	جلابية	mosque	مسجد
beans	فول	sandals	حذاء مفتوح	prayers	صلوات
spices	توابل	decorate	يزين	colorful	ملون
vinegar	خل	festival	احتفال	vegetarian	نباتي
herbs	أعشاب	boil	يغلي / يسلق	recipe	وصفة طهي
jewelry	مجوهرات	sleeve	كُم	celebrate	يحتفل

• Unit 9

vase	زهرية	heritage	تراث / ميراث	fertile	خصبة
tools	أدوات	civilization	حضارة	crops	محاصيل
pottery	فخار	growing season	موسم الزراعة	irrigation	ري
board game	لعبة لوحية	identity	هوية	system	نظام
temple	معبد	archaeologist	عالم آثار	growth	نمو / ازدهار
calendar	تقويم	historical site	موقع أثري	unique art	فن مميز
monuments	آثار	ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	culture	ثقافة



II Language

• Units 7,8 & 9

The Present Simple and Present Continuous Tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين	Present simple المضارع البسيط	Present continuous المضارع المستمر
Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة	I, We, You, They → inf. مصدر الفعل He, She, It → inf. + (s/es/ies) • They often eat meat. • He usually helps his mom.	Subject + (am/is/are) + inf. + ing • I'm talking to Dr Samir. • She is wearing a blue dress.
Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية	I, We, You, They → don't + inf. He, She, It → doesn't + inf. • We don't go to school on Fridays. • She doesn't get up early on Saturdays.	Subject + am not / isn't / aren't + inf. + ing • We aren't doing our homework now. • He isn't helping his dad in the garden.
Interrogative الجمل الاستفهامية	Wh- word + do / does + subj. +inf. ... ? • What do you wear to do sports ? – I wear a T-shirt and shorts.	Wh- word + am / is / are + subj.+ (inf. + ing) ... ? • What are they wearing now ? – They are wearing the galabeyas.
Keywords الكلمات الدالة على الزمن	always, usually, often, never, every, sometimes	now, at the moment, Look!, Listen!, Watch out!
Usage الاستخدام	for habits and facts	Something that is happening now.

General Exercises on Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Does your brother ever .... on the phone?
   a. talks b. talking c. talk d. talked
2. Today, I'm .... a galabeya.
   a. wear b. wears c. wore d. wearing
3. I .... my homework at 8:00 yesterday.
   a. doing b. do c. does d. was doing
4. Omar is .... the TV program at the moment.
   a. watched b. watches c. watching d. watch
5. Mom and I .... in the park last week.
   a. walk b. walks c. walked d. walking
6. We didn't .... a papyrus map in an Egyptian tomb.
   a. found b. finds c. find d. finding
7. The Ancient Egyptians .... the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids.
   a. build b. built c. builds d. to build
8. We .... fish with rice.
   a. eat often b. often eat c. often eats d. eats often

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a lantern – was – Dina – carrying.

   ....

2. can – eat – What food – a feast – at – you?

   ....

3. do – grow – What – in Egypt – farmers?

   ....

4. visit – like – Which – would – sites – you – to?

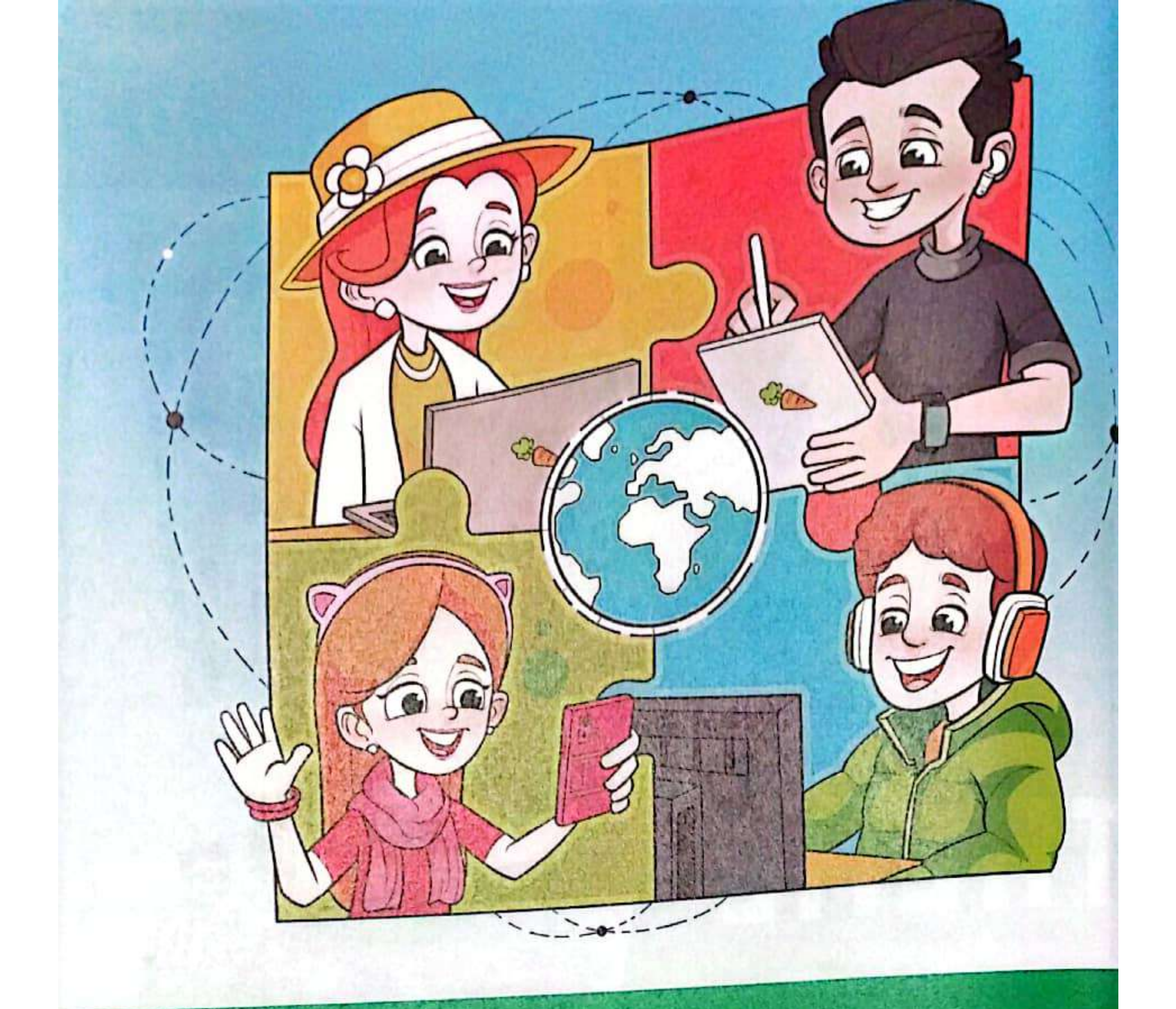
   ....

4

THEME

I'm a responsible person





Unit 10 Connecting the world

التواصل مع العالم

Aims of Unit Ten : الأهداف العامة للوحدة العاشرة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- explore different means of communication.
  - أستكشف وسائل الاتصال المختلفة.
- learn words connected to social media.
  - أتعلم كلمات مرتبطة بوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
- understand and use should and shouldn't in sentences.
  - أفهم وأستخدم "should" و "shouldn't" في الجمل.
- read a story about social media.
  - أقرأ قصة عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
- write a letter to a school newspaper.
  - أكتب خطاب إلى جريدة المدرسة.
- listen to a podcast about technological solutions
  - أستمع إلى مدونة صوتية حول الحلول التكنولوجية.
- plan a new social media platform only for kids
  - أخطط لمنصة تواصل اجتماعي جديدة للأطفال.

Lesson 1



Means of communication



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

electronic devices	أجهزة إلكترونية	presentation	عرض تقديمى
email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	blog	مدونة الكترونية
instant message (IM)	رسالة فورية عاجلة	vlog	مدونة الفيديوهات
social media platform	منصة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	means of communication	وسائل التواصل
smoke signals	إشارات الدخان	private	خاص
digital	رقمى	smartphone	هاتف ذكى
website	موقع على الانترنت		

• Extra vocabulary

form	شكل / صيغة	fact-checking	فحص الحقائق
technology	تقنية / تكنولوجيا	user	مستخدم
account	حساب	letter	خطاب
personal	شخصى	carrier pigeons	حمام زاجل
except	باستثناء / ماعدا	World Wide Web	شبكة الإنترنت العالمية
regularly	بشكل منتظم	online	عبر الإنترنت
opinions	آراء	professional	محترف
reliability	دقة / مصداقية	expert	خبير
material	مادة		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	send	يرسل	sent
access	يصل إلى	accessed	read	يقرأ	read
belong to	ينتمى إلى	belonged to	choose	يختار	chose
post	ينشر	posted	give	يعطى	gave

Did you know ?

- More than 4 billion people use different types of social media around the world. This number is increasing every year.
- يستخدم أكثر من ٤ مليارات شخص أنواعًا مختلفة من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى حول العالم. هذا العدد يتزايد كل عام
- Ancient Egyptians used carrier pigeons to send messages to each other.
- استخدم القدماء المصريين الحمام الزاجل لإرسال رسائل لبعضهم البعض

Important expressions and prepositions . تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

to each other	لبعضهم البعض	from one place to another	من مكان إلى آخر
a set of	مجموعة من	similar to	مشابه لـ

 Study these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

Word	Definition
presentation	A way to share information with other people by talking about it. طريقة لمشاركة المعلومات مع الآخرين من خلال الحديث عنها.
electronic device	A form of technology such as a smartphone, tablet, or laptop. شكل من أشكال التكنولوجيا مثل الهاتف الذكي والكمبيوتر اللوحي والكمبيوتر المحمول.
vlog	A personal website or social media account where someone regularly post short videos. موقع شخصي أو حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي حيث يقوم شخص ما بنشر مقاطع فيديو قصيرة بانتظام.
website	A set of pages on the internet about a person or business. مجموعة من الصفحات على الإنترنت عن شخص ما أو عمل تجاري.
email	A digital letter خطاب رقمي
blog	A personal website or social media account where someone regularly post written information. موقع شخصي أو حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي حيث يقوم شخص ما بنشر معلومات مكتوبة بانتظام.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nadia's favorite electronic .... is her tablet.
   a. website b. blog c. vlog d. device
2. I use my computer to send a/an ....
   a. person b. email c. letter d. place
3. .... are kinds of birds.
   a. Pigeons b. Goats c. Sheep d. Cats
4. I use my .... to call my friends.
   a. paper b. ruler c. pen d. smartphone

II Listening and Reading



⭐ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ



Do you know what we are talking about when we say **means of communication**[1]? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like **electronic devices**[2] to help us send messages.

An email is a **digital**[3] form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email **account**[4] to send these kinds of messages.

An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a **private**[5] message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.

A **presentation**[6] is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can **access**[7] websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

A **blog**[8] is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

[1] وسائل التواصل
[2] أجهزة إلكترونية
[3] رقمي
[4] حساب
[5] شخصي / خاص
[6] عرض تقديمي
[7] الوصول إلى
[8] مدونة

هل تعلم ما نتحدث عنه عندما نقول وسـائل التواصل؟ هذه طرق مختلفة لإرسـال الرسـائل من مكان إلى مكان آخر. في الماضي، اسـتخدم الناس إشارات الدخان أو الطيور لإرسال رسـائل لبعضهم البعض. اليوم، نستخدم التكنولوجيا مثل الأجهزة الإلكترونية لمسـاعدتنا في إرسال الرسـائل. البريد الإلكتروني هو شكل رقمي للرسالة. نرسل هذه الرسائل الإلكترونية إلى الأشـخاص الذين يسـتخدمون الأجهزة الإلكترونية. يجب أن يكون لديك حسـاب بريد إلكتروني لإرسال هذه الأنواع من الرسائل. الرسالة الفورية هي رسالة يمكنك إرسالها على منصة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. إنها رسالة خاصة لذا لا يمكن لأي شخص آخر رؤيتها باستثناء الشخص الذي ترسل إليه.

العرض التقديمي هو وسيلة لمشاركة المعلومات مع الآخرين. عندما تقدم عرضًا تقديميًا، فأنت تشارك معلومات حول شيء ما أو تشرح شيئًا بالحديث عنه. موقع الويب هو صفحة رئيسية على شبكة الإنترنت العالمية. عادة ما تكون مواقع الويب حول موضوع واحد. يمكن للمسـتخدمين الوصول إلى مواقع الويب من أجهزة إلكترونية مختلفة مثل الهواتف الذكيـة والأجهزة اللوحية وأجهزة الكمبيوتـر المحمولة. المدونة هي نوع خاص من المواقـع الإلكترونية. عادة تنتمي لشـخص واحد يقوم بنشر معلومات بانتظام ليقرأها الآخـرون. توجد مدونات حول العديد من الموضوعات المختلفة مثل الرياضة أو الطبخ. تشبه مدونة الفيديو المدونة الإلكترونية لأنها موقع ويب شخصي حيث ينشر الأشخاص معلومات للآخرين. الفرق هو أنه في مدونة الفيديو ، ينشر الأشخاص مقاطع فيديو يصنعونها بدلًا من النصوص المكتوبة.





استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

The reliability of social media

Teacher :
When you read blogs, watch vlogs, or take information from websites, it's very important to decide how **reliable**[1] the information is. First, look at the date of the material. You don't want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect now.
Make sure[2] you think about the person who created the material. Is she or he an expert or a professional, or just someone giving their **opinion**[3] ? **Basically**[4], you want to get facts from experts. So, if they are using phrases like "I guess" or "I feel," they are **probably**[5] just giving their opinion.
You can also use special **websites**[6] that are used for checking facts. There are a lot of different ones online, and they can help you decide what true and what's not. Ask your teacher which ones you should use.

(1) مصداقية / واقعية
(2) تأكد
(3) رأى
(4) أساسًا
(5) من المحتمل
(6) مواقع

اقرأ وتعرف.

Read and identify.

Talking about the reliability of social media
التحدث عن مصداقية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

1 checking dates فحص التواريخ	→	**When was the material written ?** متى كتبت المادة ؟ - Don't choose information that is too old. It might be incorrect now. لا تختار معلومات قديمة جدًا. قد تكون غير صحيحة الآن.
2 choosing facts not opinions اختيار حقائق وليست آراء	→	**Who created the material ?** من صنع المادة ؟ - Don't choose information that is someone's opinion. لا تختار المعلومات التى هى رأى شخص ما. - Choose information written by an expert or a professional. اختر المعلومات التى كتبها خبير أو محترف.
3 fact - checking websites مواقع فحص الحقائق	→	**How do I check the facts ?** كيف أتحقق من الحقائق ؟ - Look at special websites to check the facts you have found. انظر إلى مواقع الويب المتخصصة للتحقق من الحقائق التى وجدتها.

المعلمة : عندما تقرأ المدونات، تشاهد مدونات الفيديو، أو تأخذ معلومات من المواقع الإلكترونية، من الهام أن تقرر مدى مصداقية المعلومات أولًا. انظر إلى تاريخ الشىء (المادة) ليس عليك أن تختار أى شىء قديم جدًا لأن المعلومات ربما أصبحت مختلفة أو غير صحيحة فى الوقت الحالى تأكد من رأيك عن الشخص الذى أنشأ المعلومة هل هى أو هو خبير أو محترف، أم مجرد شخص يعطى رأيه ؟ أساسًا، أنت بحاجة للحصول على الحقائق من الخبراء. لذا إذا كانوا يستخدمون عبارات مثل «أخمن» أو «أشعر» فهم من المحتمل أن يكونوا يعبروا عن آرائهم فقط. يمكنك أيضًا استخدام مواقع خاصة والتى تستخدم للتأكد من الحقائق هناك الكثير من تلك المواقع على الإنترنت وبإمكانهم مساعدتك للتحقق من الحقيقى والمزيف. اسأل معلمك أيهم يجب عليك أن تستخدمه.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In the past, people used .... signals to send messages.
   a. water b. smoke c. air d. wind
2. Today, we use technology like .... devices to send messages.
   a. electronic b. home c. fast d. message
3. An email is a digital form of a ....
   a. book b. letter c. vlog d. sport
4. An instant message is a .... message.
   a. signal b. public c. private d. special

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. give – Why – people – do – presentations ?
   ....
2. similar – A vlog – to – is – a blog.
   ....
3. usually – Websites – topic – one – are – about.
   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

sports – personal – blogs – person

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one (1) .... who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are (2) .... about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a (3) .... website where people post information for others.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

These are different ways to send messages from one place to another. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic <u>**devices**</u> to help us send messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages. An instant message is a private message so no one can see it except the person you send it to.

A presentation is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "**devices**" in the text means ....
   a. place   b. chairs   c. machines   d. signals
2. You must have an email .... to send an email.
   a. game   b. book   c. calendar   d. account
3. An instant message is a .... message.
   a. private   b. long   c. short   d. hard

B. Answer the following questions :

4. How did people send messages in the past to each other?

   ....

5. What is a presentation ?

   ....

5 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Magdy to tell him about means of communication. Your name is Maher and your email address is maher@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is magdy@gmail.com .

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • websites • share • devices • topic

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

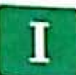
....



Lesson 2

▶ Language : Giving advice





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

backpack	حقيبة ظهر	adventure	مغامرة
incredible	لا يصدق / مذهل	keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح
checklist	قائمة مرجعية	processor	معالج

• Extra vocabulary

grammar mistake	خطأ نحوي (لغوي)	advice	نصيحة
program	برنامج	spelling	هجاء
floor	أرضية	handwriting	خط يد / كتابة
punctuation	علامات ترقيم		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
hand	يعطي / يناول	handed	sit	يجلس	sat
prepare	يجهز	prepared	let	يترك	let
practice	يتدرب/ يمارس	practiced	hurt	يجرح/ يؤذي	hurt
correct	يصحح	corrected	forget	ينسى	forgot
publish	ينشر	published			
check	يتحقق/يفحص	checked			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get home from	يعود إلى المنزل من	get better	يتحسن/ يصبح أفضل
take a break	يأخذ استراحة	touch type	يكتب باللمس (بسرعة)
sit up straight	يجلس بإستقامة		

• لاحظ : الكتابة باللمس (Touch Type) هي طريقة الكتابة على لوحة المفاتيح دون النظر إليها

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.



Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his **backpack**[1], and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great **adventure**[2] around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock.

'Hi Mom,' Adam said. 'Do you want to read my new story?'

'Of course I do, honey.'

Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, 'This is an **incredible**[3] story, Adam. You should let more people read it.'

'What do you mean?' Adam asked.

'You know, you should **prepare**[4] it to share with others.'

'OK, but how do I do that, Mom?'

'First you should touch type it.'

'OK, we're learning how to type at school. Is that when you try to type without always looking at the keyboard?

'That's right. It might sound difficult, but if you practice, you'll get better and better at it. It's much quicker than writing with a pen, and it's easier to correct or change your work.'

'I can do that, Mom.'

'Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. You don't want to hurt your neck or back. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes.'

'Yes, that's what my teacher told us,' said Adam.

'Then, you can ask the school to **publish**[5] it in the school newspaper, or even publish it yourself online.'

His mom handed the notebook back to him.

'Look at the last page. I made a **checklist**[6] for you.'

[1] حقيبة ظهر
[2] مغامرة
[3] مذهلة
[4] يجهز
[5] ينشر
[6] قائمة تدقيق

عاد آدم إلى المنزل من المدرسة وجلس على مكتبه. أخذ قلمه، كراسته، وممحاة من حقيبته، وفتح كراسته. أحب آدم الكتابة. كان يعمل على قصة جديدة عن صبي يخوض مغامرة رائعة حول إفريقيا. والدة آدم كاتبة في صحيفة محلية. وصلت إلى المنزل في الساعة السادسة. قال آدم: "مرحبًا يا أمي، هل تريدي قراءة قصتي الجديدة؟" قالت "طبعًا يا عزيزي". سلم آدم كراسته إلى والدته. جلست وبدأت تقرأها. بعد فترة، قالت: "هذه قصة مذهلة يا آدم. يجب أن تدع المزيد من الناس يقرأونها". سأل آدم: "ماذا تقصدي؟". "كما تعلم، يجب أن تعدها لمشاركة مع الآخرين". "حسنًا لكن كيف افعل ذلك يا أمي؟" "أولًا، يجب أن تكتبها بسرعة على لوحة المفاتيح". "حسنًا، نحن نتعلم كيفية الكتابة باستخدام لوحة المفاتيح في المدرسة. هل هذا عندما تحاول الكتابة دون النظر دائمًا إلى لوحة المفاتيح؟" "هذا صحيح. قد يبدو الأمر صعبًا، لكن إذا تمرنت، فستتحسن فيه بشكل أفضل. إنها أسرع بكثير من الكتابة بالقلم، ومن الأسهل تصحيح عملك أو تغييره". "يمكنني أن أفعل ذلك يا أمي". "فقط تذكر أن تجلس مستقيمًا وتضع قدميك على الأرض. أنت لا تريد أن تؤذي رقبتك أو ظهرك. خذ استراحة كل ١٠ أو ١٥ دقيقة". قال آدم: "نعم، هذا ما أخبرنا به أستاذي". "ثم يمكنك أن تطلب من المدرسة نشره في جريدة المدرسة، أو حتى نشره بنفسك على الإنترنت". أعادت والدته كراسته إليه. "انظر إلى الصفحة الأخيرة. لقد قمت بعمل قائمة تدقيق لك".

★ Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

Publishing Checklist قواعد النشر

- You shouldn't write your story by hand.
- لا يجب أن تكتب قصتك باليد.
- You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.
- يجب عليك استخدام برنامج معالجة النصوص أو الكتابة، وحاول أن تكتب بسرعة على لوحة المفاتيح.
- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes.
- يجب ألا يكون لديك أى أخطاء إملائية أو نحوية.
- You should check your spelling or you should ask an adult to check it for you.
- يجب عليك التحقق من الهجاء أو يجب أن تطلب من شخص بالغ التحقق من ذلك.
- You shouldn't forget punctuation.
- لا يجب أن تنسى علامات الترقيم.
- You should check your work.
- يجب عليك التحقق من عملك.
- You shouldn't work too long without a break.
- لا يجب أن تعمل لوقت طويل بدون استراحة.
- And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.
- يجب أن تجلس بشكل مستقيم مع وضع قدميك على الأرض.



III Language

Should & Shouldn't يجب أن & لا يجب أن

- We use [should / shouldn't] to give advice.
- تستخدم [should / shouldn't] لإعطاء النصيحة

▸ We use "should/shouldn't" to talk about things that are good ideas to do or bad ideas not to do.

◂ تستـخدم "should/shouldn't" عندمـا نريد أن نتحدث عن أشـياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

Formation التكوين

Subject [الفاعل] + should /shouldn't + [inf.]

ex
- You should choose a title for your story.
- You should check your spelling.
- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes.
- You shouldn't work too long without a break.

Notice : [shouldn't = should not]



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You should .... smoking.
   a. to stop   b. stops   c. stop   d. stopped
2. She has a headache. She .... take medicine.
   a. should   b. shouldn't   c. are   d. am
3. I should .... my homework before I go to bed.
   a. doesn't   b. did   c. does   d. do
4. You .... be worried to ask your teacher for help.
   a. shouldn't   b. shouldn't to   c. should to   d. should
5. I am hungry. I should .... some fruit.
   a. ate   b. eaten   c. eating   d. eat
6. You shouldn't .... your toys. Share it with your friends.
   a. hid   b. hidden   c. hide   d. hiding
7. I .... study hard for my exam.
   a. shouldn't   b. should   c. should to   d. shouldn't to
8. I am really tired. I .... have a rest.
   a. should   b. shouldn't   c. should to   d. shouldn't to

2 Read and complete with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية.

1. You .... (should) drink too much coffee; it's bad for your health.
2. It's an incredible movie. You shouldn't .... (watches) it.
3. You shouldn't .... (to go) to that restaurant. The food is terrible.
4. He .... (shouldn't) study more if he wants to pass his exam.
5. You should .... (to help) your friends.
6. I should .... (eating) more vegetables, but I hate them.
7. It's raining. I think we .... (shouldn't) take a taxi.
8. Children .... (should) speak to strangers.



General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adam got home from school, and sat down at his ....
   a. table b. chair c. desk d. bag
2. Adam loved to ....
   a. read b. write c. walk d. run
3. He was working on a new ....
   a. lesson b. article c. story d. poem
4. Adam's mom is a .... at a local newspaper.
   a. writer b. singer c. engineer d. vet

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

share – eat – type – incredible

Moaz : Hi, Dad. Do you want to read my new story?
Dad : Of course I do, Moaz.
Moaz : Here you are, Dad.
Dad : This is a/an (1) .... story. You should let more people read it.
Moaz : What do you mean?
Dad : You should prepare it to (2) .... with others.
Moaz : How do I do that, Dad?
Dad : You should touch (3) .... the story and publish it online.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You should .... your hands before each meal.
   a. washing b. washes c. wash d. to wash
2. You .... have any spelling or grammar mistakes.
   a. shouldn't b. should c. aren't d. should to
3. You .... choose a title for your story.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. should to d. to should
4. You shouldn't .... afraid to tell your parents when you have a problem.
   a. am b. be c. is d. are
5. You should .... hard for the exam.
   a. studying b. study c. studies d. studied

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. learning – how – school – We're – to type – at.

....

2. checklist – I – a – you – made – for.

....

3. check – should – You – spelling – your.

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are a lot of rules you should follow to share a story. You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type. You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should check your spelling or you should ask an adult to check it for you. You shouldn't **forget** punctuation. You should check your work. You shouldn't work too long without a break or you'll feel tired. You should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This text is about the .... you should follow to share a story.
   a. roles b. games c. rules d. mistakes
2. The underlined word "**forget**" is the opposite of ....
   a. publish b. check c. remember d. advise
3. You should .... up straight with your feet on the floor.
   a. run b. walk c. sit d. sleep

B. Answer the following questions :

4. There are many rules that help you share your story. Mention two.

....

5. What will happen if you work without a break ?

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Rules to share a story

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • touch type • mistakes • check • prepare

....

....

....

Lesson 3

▸ Reading



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

cyberfriends	أصدقاء عبر الإنترنت	settings	إعدادات
nasty	بغيض / كريه	comment	تعليق
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	account	حساب

• Extra vocabulary

horrible	مروع / رهيب	hobby	هواية
photography	تصوير	ring	يرن

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
guess	يخمن	guessed	speak	يتحدث	spoke
introduce	يقدم	introduced			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- sign up يسجل دخول (لأول مرة)
- set up his account يقوم بإنشاء حسابه
- make fun of يسخر من
- See you tomorrow! أراك غدًا!
- sign into ..... يسجل الدخول لـ .....
- Turn off the comments. قم بغلق التعليقات.

II Listening and Reading

★ **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Youssef Goes Online

[1] وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
[2] حساب
[3] أصدقاء عبر الإنترنت

The 2 o'clock bell rang. Youssef and his best friend Wael started walking home from school together.

'You're thirteen now, aren't you?' asked Wael.

'Yeah. Why?'

'That means you can sign up for a **social media**[1] **account**[2] like me.'

Youssef thought about this idea for a minute. 'I guess I'll have to ask my parents first. What do you use your account for ?'

'I post videos. I also made some cyberfriends online,' said Wael.

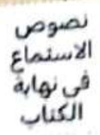
'But who are these **cyberfriends**[3] ? Do you really know them ?' he asked.

[4] بغيض / كريه
[5] تعليقات
[6] سجل الدخول لـ

'No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool !'
'I'll think about it. See you tomorrow !' said Youssef.
Youssef got home from school and his mom was in the kitchen.
'Hi, honey. How was school today ?'
'Good ! Mom, can I get a social media account ? Wael has one and he says it's really cool.'
'Do you think you're old enough, Youssef ?'
'Yes. And I need it for my group project.'
Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it. The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were **nasty**[4].
One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.
Youssef told his mom about the bad **comments**[5].
"I think there are some things you need to learn about using social media," she said. '**Sign into**[6] your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you.
If you want, you can turn them back on later.'
'Thanks, Mom. I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens.'

دق جرس الساعة الثانية. بدأ يوسف وصديقه المقرب وائل فى العودة سيرًا إلى المنزل من المدرسة معًا. أنت الآن فى الثالثة عشرة، أليس كذلك ؟ سأل وائل. "نعم. لماذا ؟" "هذا يعنى أنه يمكنك تسجيل الدخول للحصول على حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى مثلى." فكر يوسف فى هذه الفكرة لمدة دقيقة. أعتقد أننى سأضطر إلى سؤال والداى أولًا. فى ماذا تستخدم حسابك ؟ قال وائل : أنا أنشر مقاطع فيديو. لقد تعرفت أيضًا على بعض الأصدقاء عبر الإنترنت". سألته : "لكن من هم هؤلاء الأصدقاء عبر الإنترنت ؟ هل تعرفهم حقًا ؟" " لا، لكن يمكننى مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو الخاصة بهم. البعض منهم رائع جدًا !". قال يوسف : "سأفكر فى هذا الأمر. أراك غدًا !" عاد يوسف إلى المنزل من المدرسة وكانت والدته فى المطبخ. أهلًا عزيزى. كيف كانت المدرسة اليوم ؟" "جيدة ! أمى، هل يمكننى الحصول على حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى ؟ وائل لديه حساب ويقول إنه رائع حقًا !" "هل تعتقد أنك كبير فى السن بما يكفى يا يوسف "نعم. وأحتاجه لمشروع مجموعى". ساعده والده فى فتح حساب له بعد وجبة العشاء! ذهب مباشرة إلى غرفته وصنع أول فيديو له. قدم نفسه وتحدث عن هوايته المفضلة، التصوير الفوتوغرافى. ثم نشرها.
فى صباح اليوم التالى، سجل الدخول إلى حسابه. كانت هناك بعض التعليقات من أشخاص لا يعرفهم، وبعض التعليقات كانت بغيضة. قال أحدهم أشياء مروعة عن طريقة تحدث يوسف بالإنجليزية، وسخر شخص آخر من شعر يوسف وملابسه. لقد شعر بالحزن حقًا. أخبر يوسف والدته عن التعليقات السيئة.
قالت : "أعتقد أن هناك بعض الأشياء التى تحتاج لتعلمها عن استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. سجل الدخول إلى حسابك وانتقل إلى الإعدادات. أولًا، نحتاج إلى جعل صفحتك خاصة. هذا يعنى أن أصدقائك فقط هم من يمكنهم مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو الخاصة بك. الآن، دعنا نغلق التعليقات. بهذه الطريقة لا يستطيع الناس قول أشياء سيئة عنك. إذا أردت، يمكنك إعادة تشغيلها لاحقًا. شكرًا يا أمى. سأقوم بعمل فيديو جديد الآن وأرى ما سيحدث".

General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Samy's dad helped him set up his .... after dinner.
   a. homework b. account c. bag d. game
2. He went straight to his room and made his first ....
   a. lesson b. work c. language d. video
3. Samy talked about his favorite .... ,photography.
   a. friend b. program c. hobby d. film
4. Some comments were ....
   a. good b. nice c. beautiful d. nasty

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

school – social – cyberfriends – watch

Ali : You're thirteen now, aren't you ?

Omar : Yeah. Why ?

Ali : That means you can sign up for a (1).................... media account.

Omar : What do you use your account for ?

Ali : I post videos. I also made some (2).................... online.

Omar : Do you really know them ?

Ali : No, but I can (3).................... their videos.

Omar : That's great!

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. You shouldn't .... nasty comments on social media.
   a. writes b. wrote c. writing d. write
2. How .... your mom help you ?
   a. do b. are c. have d. does
3. My friend, Sara, ... a social media account.
   a. have b. has c. don't have d. having
4. I .... some cyberfriends online yesterday.
   a. make b. makes c. making d. made
5. I can sign .... for a social media account.
   a. up b. at c. into d. about

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do – What – you – for – use – your account ?
....
2. your – friend – Does – social media – use ?
....
3. make – going – I'm – to – video – a new.
....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Omar has a new social media account. His older brother helped him to set up his account. Omar signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know. Omar felt really sad because some of the comments were **nasty**. Omar told his mom about the bad comments.

Mom said, "Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you." Omar said, "I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens."

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. Omar's .... helped him set up his account.
   a. friend   b. brother   c. teacher   d. father
2. To make my page .... means only my friends can see my videos.
   a. public   b. private   c. national   d. global
3. The underlined word "**nasty**" means ....
   a. bad   b. good   c. nice   d. great

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Why does mom turn off the comments ?
....
5. Why is Omar going to make a new video ?
....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Social media

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • sign up • cyberfriends • comments • account

....
....
....

Lesson 4 ▶ Writing





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

report	تقرير	poetry	شعر
currently	حاليًا	editor	محرر
global community	مجتمع عالمى	fiction	خيال

Extra vocabulary

college	كلية	high school	مدرسة ثانوية
free time	وقت فراغ	fourth-grade	الصف الرابع (مرحلة تعليمية)
writer	كاتب	perfect	مثالى
project	مشروع	general	عام
writing skills	مهارات الكتابة	grade	درجة / صف دراسى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
create	ينشئ	created	think	يفكر/ يعتقد	thought
improve	يتحسن	improved	write	يكتب	wrote
share	يشارك	shared			
join	ينضم	joined			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for fun	للمتعة	in the morning	فى الصباح
interested in	مهتم بـ	after-school club	نادى ما بعد المدرسة
in the future	فى المستقبل	in high school	فى المدرسة الثانوية
at college	فى الكلية	Sincerely yours	المخلص لك

II Listening and Reading



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Dear Editor,

I am writing because I think that the school should create an after-school writers' club. Don't you think this is a good idea ?

As a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea.

There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently, there is no story writing or poetry writing club at our school. First, we should create one general writing club.

If we improve our writing skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college. It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our global community. Don't you agree ?

Sincerely yours,

Amira El-Sayyed

4th grade

عزيزي المحرر،

اكتب لأنني أعتقد أن المدرسة يجب أن تنشئ ناديًا للكتاب بعد المدرسة. ألا تعتقد أن هذه فكرة جيدة ؟ كطالبة في الصف الرابع، أحب كتابة القصص القصيرة والتقارير حول الأشياء التى أعتقد أنها مثيرة للاهتمام. أنا أكتب لمشاريعي وللمتعة. ليس لدى وقت للكتابة فى الصباح، لكن لدى وقت للكتابة بعد المدرسة. بعض أصدقائى مهتمون أيضًا بالكتابة بعد المدرسة. لذا، لهذا السبب أعتقد أن نادى ما بعد المدرسة هو فكرة مثالية. هناك الكثير من النوادى الأخرى مثل نادى الألعاب ونادى العلوم ونادى الطهى. حاليًا، لا يوجد نادى لكتابة القصة أو كتابة الشعر فى مدرستنا. أولًا، يجب أن ننشئ نادى عام للكتابة. إذا قمنا بتحسين مهارات الكتابة لدينا الآن، فسوف يساعدنا ذلك فى المستقبل فى المدرسة الثانوية والكلية. كما أنه سيساعدنا فى كتابة أفكارنا ونشرها ومشاركتها مع مجتمعنا العالمى. ألا توافق ؟

مع خالص التقدير،

أميرة السيد

الصف الرابع

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What does Amira like to write?
- She likes to write short stories and reports.

Practice 2. What clubs are in Amira's school ?

....



III Language

Coordinating conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences together.

أداة الربط هى كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل ببعض.

1 To add two ideas together :

نستخدم (and) عندما نضيف أفكار (نربطها) ببعضها البعض أو أحداث متتالية :

and و — I like poetry **and** fiction.

2 To show contrast between two ideas :

نستخدم (but) عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين :

but لكن — There's a newspaper **, but** there isn't a magazine.

3 To show choices :

نستخدم (or) عند عرض الاختيارات :

or أو — You can write short stories **or** articles.



Pop Quiz on Language

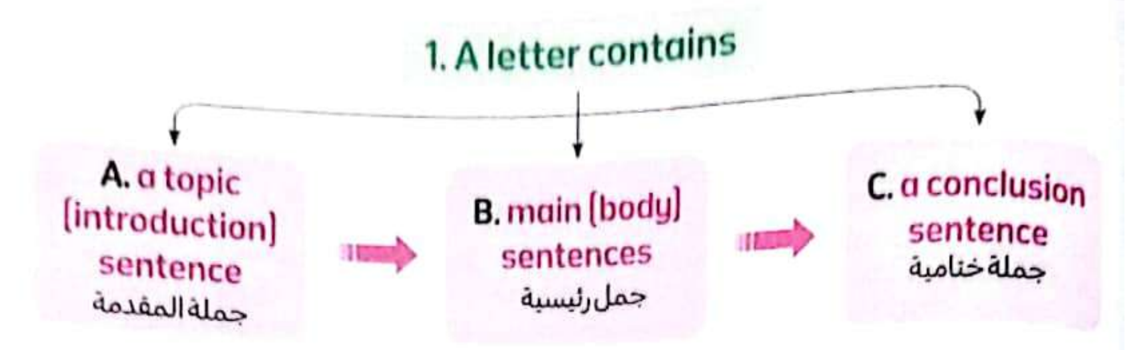
▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I like chocolate ice cream, ... my sister likes vanilla.
   a. so b. or c. but d. because
2. You can come by car .... by bus.
   a. because b. but c. and d. or
3. I tried to help her, ... she didn't want me to help her.
   a. but b. and c. or d. because
4. In winter, it's cold .... rainy.
   a. and b. because c. but d. or

IV Writing Skill

Tips when you write a letter to the editor of a newspaper.
خطوات عندما تكتب خطاب للمحرر في جريدة.

1. A letter contains



- Start your letter with 'Dear Editor,'. — ابدأ خطابك بـ "عزيزي المحرر".
- Finish your letter with 'Sincerely yours,'. — انهِ خطابك بعبارة "مع خالص التقدير لك".
- Say why you are writing in the first sentence. — اكتب سبب كتابتك في الجملة الأولى.
- Give a couple of examples to support your idea. — أعط مثالين لدعم فكرتك.

2. Punctuation marks

1 A period (.) : ١. نقطة (.) :

- We use a period (.) at the end of the sentence.

- نستخدم النقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة.

- I feel happy .　　　- He is sad .

2 Comma (,) : ٢. فاصلة سفيلة (,) :

- I like chocolate, ice cream, pizza and cola.

- تستخدم الـ (,) عند كتابة قائمة (مجموعة) من الأشياء.

3 The question mark (?) : ٣. علامة الاستفهام (؟) :

- When we write questions, we use a question mark (?) at the end of the question.

- عندما نكتب أسئلة نضع علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

Are you OK?　　　What's your name?

General Exercises on Lesson 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Amira is in a .... grade.
   a. sixth b. first c. second d. fourth
2. Amira likes to write short ....
   a. stories b. books c. articles d. poems
3. Amira has time to write .... school.
   a. in b. at c. after d. before
4. If we improve our .... skills now, it will help us in the future.
   a. reading b. writing c. drawing d. speaking

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali doesn't like grapes .... apples.
   a. for b. so c. or d. but
2. I like poetry .... stories.
   a. or b. and c. but d. to
3. Writing will help us .... the future.
   a. in b. at c. from d. on
4. I don't have any free time today, ... I'm free this weekend.
   a. and b. or c. to d. but
5. I'm very interested .... writing short stories.
   a. on b. at c. in d. out

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to – like – stories – I – short – write.

....

2. stories – writing – Do – like – you ?

....

3. club – perfect – a – idea – An after-school – is.

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Dear Editor,

I am writing because I think we should create a social media account for the fourth grade students. Will you help us ?

We could use our social media account to write about life in the fourth grade. We could write about school or life in general. We would like to interview students in fifth and sixth grade. Some of my friends would like to **post** their photos and videos. My other friends would like to create games, puzzles, and art work. A social media account would be fun and could improve our technology skills at the same time.

We could use our social media account to contact fourth-grade students in different countries. We could ask students to send us articles about life

in their country. We could learn a lot about different cultures, but we need to learn how to use the internet safely first. I think this is a great idea and I hope you agree.

Yours faithfully,
Tarek Hussein
Fourth grade

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We would like to .... students in fifth and sixth grade.
   a. join b. interview c. create d. guess
2. The underlined word "post" means ....
   a. think b. like c. use d. share
3. My other friends would like to create .... , puzzles and art work.
   a. toys b. games c. work d. pictures

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does Tarek want the editor to help him to do ?
....
5. What would they write about ?
....

5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

story – video – global – college

There are lots of clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently, there is no (1) .... writing or poetry writing club at our school. If we improve our writing skills now, it will help us in high school and at (2) .... It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our (3) .... community.

6 **Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Omar to tell him about after-school writers' club. Your name is Eyad. Your email address is eyad@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is omar@yahoo.com.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • good idea • short stories • writing skills • improve

New Message
From :
To :
Subject :
.... ,
....
....
....
....

Lessons 5&6

- Solutions to problems in Egypt
- Project





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

smog-free tower	برج للتنقية من الضباب الدخانى	power plants	محطات توليد الطاقة
scrubber	جهاز منظف الغازات (مدخنة تنقية الغاز)	indoor	فى الداخل
fossil fuel	الوقود الحفرى	electric cars	سيارات كهربائية
outdoor	فى الخارج	dust	تراب / غبار

Extra vocabulary

inventor	مخترع	task	مهمة
classmate	زميل دراسة	industry	الصناعة
greening	عمل مساحات خضراء (تخضر)	smokestacks	مداخن
traffic	حركة المرور	harmful	مضر
environmental scientist	عالم بيئى	fashionable	عصرى
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	fascinating	رائع / مذهل
impressed	منبهر / متأثر	vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	serious	حاد / خطير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
collect	يجمع	collected	find	يجد	found
absorb	يمتص	absorbed	make	يصنع	made
invent	يخترع	invented	speak	يتحدث	spoke
solve	يحل	solved	deal	يتعامل	dealt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• collect with	يجمع بـ	• make ... worse	يجعل ... أسوأ
• by the inventor	بواسطة المخترع	• sum up	خلاصة القول
• deal with	يتعامل مع		

Did you know ?

• The first electric car was invented in the 1830s in Scotland by the inventor Robert Anderson.

- اخترع المخترع روبرت آندرسون أول سيارة كهربائية فى ثلاثينات القرن التاسع عشر فى أسكتلندا.

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Welcome to the podcast Technology World Today. Today in the studio with me is the environmental scientist Dr. Nesma Hegazy. We'll be talking about the problem of air pollution. Welcome to the show Dr. Hegazy.

مرحبًا في مدونتنا الصوتية " عالم التكنولوجيا اليوم". اليوم وفي الاستديو معي عالمة البيئة الدكتورة نسمة حجازي. سنتحدث عن مشكلة تلوث الهواء. مرحبًا بكِ في البرنامج دكتورة حجازي.



Thank you for inviting me.

شكراً لك على دعوتي.



So, how big of a problem is air pollution in Egypt today?

إذًا إلى أي مدى وصلت مشكلة تلوث الهواء في مصر اليوم؟



Well, it is quite serious, especially in the biggest cities. That is what we call outdoor pollution. But most people don't realize that there is also indoor pollution – that is the pollution that is inside of our homes, schools, and offices. But let's just talk about outdoor air pollution today. This is produced by our cars, buses, airplanes, factories, and power plants. We must also remember that there is some dust from the desert in the air. But when we burn fossil fuels, we make air pollution worse. And since it doesn't rain very much in Cairo or other areas of the country, the air doesn't get cleaned.

حسنًا، أنه خطير إلى حد ما، خصوصًا في المدن الكبيرة. وهذا ما نسميه التلوث الخارجي. لكن معظم الناس لا تدرك أنه يوجد أيضًا تلوث داخلي - وهو التلوث الذي يكون داخل منازلنا، مدارسنا ومكاتبنا. ولكن دعنا فقط نتحدث عن تلوث الهواء الخارجي اليوم. والذي يُنتج من سياراتنا، الحافلات، الطائرات، المصانع ومحطات توليد الطاقة. علينا أيضًا أن نتذكر أنه يوجد بعض الغبار من الصحراء في الهواء. لكن عندما نحرق الوقود الحفري، نجعل تلوث الهواء أسوأ. نظرًا لأنها لا تمطر كثيرًا في القاهرة أو مناطق أخرى في البلد فإن الهواء لا يصبح نظيفًا.



So, how can technology help us deal with this problem?

إذًا كيف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا في التعامل مع هذه المشكلة؟



Fortunately, there are a couple of ways. First of all, there are electric cars. There aren't many on the streets now, but you will definitely see more and more of these in the future – the government has already started helping car companies start producing electric cars.

لحسن الحظ هناك طريقتان. أولًا يوجد سيارات كهربائية. لا يوجد الكثير منهم على الطرق الآن، لكنك بالتأكيد سترى أكثر وأكثر منهم في المستقبل - بدأت الحكومة بالفعل في مساعدة شركات السيارات في بدأ إنتاج السيارات الكهربائية.





That's good news.

هذه أخبار جيدة.



Then there are devices called scrubbers. You can find them on the smokestacks of some factories or power plants. These devices are used to clean some of the gases coming from the factories. They remove the dangerous parts of the gases and make it safe to store or use them in some other way.

ثم هناك أجهزة تسـمَّى مداخن تنقيـة الغازات. بإمكانك أن تجدهم عـلى مداخن بعض المصانع أو محطات توليد الطاقة. تُسـتخدم هـذه الأجهزة لتنظيف بعض الغازات التي تـأتي من المصانع. فهم يزيلون الأجزاء الخطيرة من الغازات وجعلها آمنة للتخزين أو لاستخدامها بطرق أخرى.



That's fascinating!

هذا مذهل!



Yes, it is. We also have smog free towers. These are like giant vacuum cleaners that take polluted air in, clean it, and then send it back out for us to breathe. These 7-meter towers can only clean air in a small area like a park. So, we would need a lot of them to clean an entire city. However, some are already being used in China, Mexico, and the Netherlands.

بالفعل. ولدينا أيضًا أبراج لتنقية الهواء من الضباب الدخاني. يشبهون المكنسة الكهربائية العملاقة الـتي تمتص الهـواء الملوث إلى الداخـل وتنظفه ثم تعيده للخارج لنا لنتنفسـه. هـذه الأبراج ذات السـبعة أمتار بإمكانهـا تنظيف الهواء في منطقة صغـيرة مثل الحديقة. لذا سـنحتاج المزيد منهم لتنظيف المدينة بأكملها. ومع ذلك، بعضهم يُستخدم بالفعل في الصين، المكسيك وهولندا.



That's really interesting. What do they do with the pollution they collect?

هذا مثير للاهتمام. ماذا يفعلون بالملوثات التي يجمعوها ؟



You might be surprised to hear this, but they use it to make fashionable jewelry.

ربما تتفاجأ لسماعك هذا، لكنهم يستخدموها لصنع مجوهرات على الموضة (عصرية).



Really? Wow. I am impressed. Thank you so much for talking with us today, Dr. Hegazy.

حقًا؟ واو. أنا منبهر. شكرًا جزيلًا لك للتحدث معنا اليوم دكتورة حجازي.



How to write a presentation

Presentation phrases

Starting off the presentations

- Good morning / afternoon, everyone. صباح الخير / مساء الخير للجميع.
- Today I'm going to talk about ... اليوم سوف أتحدث عن ...
- Let's start with ... هيا نبدأ بـ ...
- Now, let's look at ... الآن، هيا ننظر إلى ...

Finishing off presentations

- To finish / To sum up, .. لننهي / لنلخص ...
- Are there any questions? هل يوجد أي أسئلة ؟
- Thank you very much. شكرًا جزيلًا.

Some presentation tips

- Be confident. كن واثقًا.
- Smile. ابتسم.
- Make eye contact with the class. قم بالتواصل البصري مع فصلك.
- If you are nervous, look at a friend first. إذا كنت متوترًا، انظر إلى صديق أولًا.
- Speak slowly. Don't talk too loudly or too softly. تكلم ببطء، لا تتكلم بصوت مرتفع جدًا ولا هادئ جدًا.
- Don't move around a lot. لا تتحرك كثيرًا.
- Use some of presentation phrases. استخدم بعض من عبارات العرض التقديمي.

A presentation about "Greening" عرض تقديمي عن التخضر

Good morning, everyone.
Today I'm going to talk about "Greening".
Let's start with the importance of greening to our environment. Plants can help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide from the air.
Now, let's look at this picture of the smoke from the factory. It's really harmful.
To finish, I want to focus on the great danger of pollution and importance of greening idea.
Are there any questions ?
Thank you very much.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Greening – pollution – indoor – created

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is (1) .... by airplanes, traffic and factories. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, it also creates (2) .... However, there are some new ways to solve the problem of air pollution. Scrubbers and smog free towers help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. (3) .... is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The plants help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. The plants also catch dust and other harmful pollution. In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too **hot** in summer. The plants keep the buildings warm in winter. The cooler temperatures are also easier for people to live in. The plants also provide homes for bees, insects and birds, so greening helps nature, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The plants catch .... and other harmful pollution.
   a. dust b. fuel c. air d. fossil
2. The underlined word "**hot**" is the opposite of ....
   a. wet b. cold c. noisy d. busy
3. The plants absorb carbon dioxide to .... the air.
   a. pollute b. heat c. clean d. blow

B. Answer the following questions :

4. How does greening help nature? ....
5. How is greening helpful in hot countries? ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. be – You – confident – should. ....
2. air – causes – What – pollution? ....

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Air pollution

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • scrubbers • chemicals • factories • fossil fuels

....

....

Skills



UNIT 10

1 Reading comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخمن المعنى.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

To write a story, you shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type. You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You shouldn't work too long without a break. And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor. You shouldn't forget punctuation.

شرح الحل تقرأ الفقرة جيداً لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستهدفة

• touch type يكتب بسرعة • forget ينسى

1. The underlined phrase "**touch type**" means ....
   a. write slowly   b. write quickly
   c. paint   d. draw pictures

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**forget**" is ....
   a. read   b. sleep   c. remember   d. prepare

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Nahla has a new social media account . Her older brother Ali helped her to set up her account. She wants to be a wildlife photographer when she grows up. So, she posts photos of flowers, trees, birds and animals on her account. Nahla's account is private so only her friends and family can see it. Her friends like her photos and they always write nice comments about them.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**older**" is ....
   a. younger   b. taller   c. faster   d. slower

2. The underlined phrase "**set up**" means ....
   a. read   b. see   c. create   d. cut

Skills

2 Writing



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (وسائل التواصل) و (تلوث الهواء) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

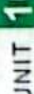
Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Means of communication	▶ Write the meaning : رسائل .... موقع إلكترونى .... اجهزة .... عرض تقديمى .... يوضح .... يشارك	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. There are different ways to send .... 2. A presentation is a way to .... information. 3. .... are usually about one topic. 4. Users can access websites from different electronic	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Means of communication"
Air pollution	وقود حفرى .... غازات .... مشكلة .... مصانع .... صحة .... التخضر	1. Air pollution is one of the biggest .... for us. 2. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic and .... 3. Air pollution is bad for our .... 4. .... is growing a wall of plants on the side of buildings.	▶ Write an email using the sentences: "Air pollution"



3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Means of communication	send	There are different ways to send messages from one place to another place.
	blog	A blog is a special kind of website.
	email	An email is a digital form of a letter.
	instant message	An instant message is a message that you can send on a social media platform.
	presentation	A presentation is a way to share information.
Presentation tips	confident	Be confident.
	eye contact	Make eye contact with the class.
	loudly	Don't talk too loudly or too softly.
	move	Don't move around a lot.
Importance of plants	clean - air	The plants help to clean the air.
	carbon dioxide	Plants absorb carbon dioxide.
	oxygen	Plants produce oxygen.
	dust - harmful	Plants catch dust and other harmful pollution.
Publishing checklist	story	You shouldn't write your story by hand.
	word processor	You should use a word processor or writing program.
	spelling	You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes.
	check	You should check your work.
Reliability of social media	old	Don't choose information that is too old.
	opinion	Don't choose information that is someone's opinion.
	professional	Choose information written by an expert or a professional.
	websites	We should look at special websites to check the facts we have found.

Skills 4 Important Topic

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

1 Means of communication

A presentation and website are means of communication.[1] A presentation is a way to share information with others.[2] When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.[3] A website is a home page on the World Wide Web.[4] Websites are usually about one topic.[5] Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.[6]

2 Publishing checklist

To write a story, you shouldn't write your story by hand.[7] You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.[8] You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes.[9] You shouldn't work too long without a break.[10] And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.[11] You shouldn't forget punctuation.[12]

3 A new social media account

Nahla has a new social media account.[13] Her older brother Ali helped her to set up her account.[14] She wants to be a wildlife photographer when she grows up.[15] So, she posts photos of flowers, trees, birds and animals on her account.[16] Nahla's account is private so only her friends and family can see it.[17] Her friends like her photos and they always write nice comments about them.[18]

4 Air pollution

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health.[19] Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants.[20] When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution.[21] However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution.[22] We have learned about scrubbers and smog free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.[23] Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.[24]

Review on Unit 10



مراجعة عامة على الوحدة العاشرة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary



a blog



a vlog



an email



a website



presentation



an instant message



a social media platform



means of communication

Language

Giving advice

Subj. + should / shouldn't + inf.

- You **shouldn't write** your story by hand.
- You **should eat** some fruit.

Coordinating conjunctions

or / and / but

- I don't have any free time today, **but** I'm free this weekend.
- I like poetry **and** fiction.
- She doesn't like reading **or** writing.

Test 7 on Unit 10

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm in grade ....
   a. one b. six c. five d. four
2. I like to write short stories and .... about things that are interesting.
   a. articles b. reports c. presentations d. newspapers
3. I don't have time to write in the ....
   a. morning b. afternoon c. evening d. night
4. I think after-school .... is a perfect idea.
   a. park b. bank c. club d. library

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

message - newspaper - account - information

Salma : Do you know that there are different ways to send messages?
Sara : Yes, I do.
Salma : What do you need to send an email ?
Sara : I must have an email (1) .... to send messages.
Salma : Where can you send an instant (2) .... ?
Sara : I can send it on social media platform.
Salma : Why do people give presentations ?
Sara : To share (3) .... about something by talking about it.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is **created** by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, it also creates pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is about "..................... ".
   a. Social media b. Festivals c. Computer games d. Air pollution
2. The underlined word "**created**" means ....
   a. produced b. cleaned c. hid d. caught
3. We need ways to .... the problem of air pollution.
   a. save b. stop c. make d. create

B. Answer the following questions :

4. How can we solve the air pollution problem ? ....

5. What happens when we burn fossil fuels ? ....

4 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. ( )
2. Amir took some pictures with his phone. ( )

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You can wash your .... in a washing machine.
   a. clothes b. food c. paper d. roof
2. Plastic trash can .... the birds.
   a. make b. help c. harm d. put

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He has a toothache. He .... eat candies.
   a. wasn't b. isn't c. shouldn't d. should
2. You .... eat vegetables and fruits to stay healthy.
   a. shouldn't to b. shouldn't c. should d. should to
3. Nada is bad at swimming .... playing tennis.
   a. but b. and c. or d. because
4. Noha is very tired, so she should .... a doctor.
   a. seen b. see c. saw d. seeing
5. I like reading, ... I don't like writing stories.
   a. or b. but c. and d. because

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. message - a - An instant message - is - private.
....
2. you – pollution – doing – to stop - What - are ?
....
3. can – dust – Plants - catch – in air.
....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Means of communication

Guiding elements : • electronic devices • blog • website

....
....
....

Test 8 on Unit 10

Collected From Governorates Examinations

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hana is in grade ....
   a. three b. four c. five d. six
2. Hana thinks the school should create a club for ....
   a. cooking b. games c. writers d. science
3. Hana likes to write ....
   a. articles b. books c. newspapers d. stories
4. Hana doesn't have time to .... in the morning.
   a. watch b. sing c. write d. play

[El-Beheira – Itay El-Baroud 2023]

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

posts – private – account – goes

Heba : How old should you have to be to open a social media account ?
Rehab : Thirteen years old.
Heba : Why does your brother want to have a social media (1) .... ?
Rehab : Because his friend, Wael has one.
Heba : What does Wael use his social media account for ?
Rehab : He (2) .... videos and he makes new friends online.
Heba : How can you make your account safer ?
Rehab : By making the page (3) .... and turning off the comments.

[Menofia – Menouf 2023]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication ? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a <u>digital</u> form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. transportation b. pollution
   c. means of communication d. jobs
2. The underlined word **"digital"** has the same meaning as ....
   a. technological b. electrical c. electronic d. metal
3. Means of communication are different ways to send ....
   a. conversations b. messages c. greetings d. sports

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What means of communication did people use in the past ?

5. What do you need to send an email ?

[Cairo - Matarya 2023]

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The Mediterranean Sea is in Cairo.
2. Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... were working at site under the Mediterranean Sea.
   a. Teachers b. Doctors c. Vets d. Archaeologists
2. The shipwreck in Abu Qir .... is buried under clay.
   a. Bay b. country c. city d. village [Alexandria - West 2023]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You .... help your mom and dad. [Cairo - Helwan 2023]
   a. should b. shouldn't c. should to d. shouldn't to
2. All countries must reduce air pollution .... water pollution.
   a. so b. or c. but d. and [Cairo - Heliopolis 2023]
3. You should .... your work. [Kafr El-Sheikh - El-Hamool 2023]
   a. checks b. check c. checking d. to check
4. I'm really tired. I .... have a rest. [Cairo - Bab El Shaeria 2023]
   a. shouldn't b. should c. hasn't d. mustn't
5. What should I .... to stay safe online ? [Alexandria - West 2023]
   a. do b. did c. doing d. does

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. some - made - I - online - cyberfriends. [Kafr El-Sheikh - Balteem 2023]

2. used - People - signals - send - to - messages - smoke. [El-Beheria - Kafr El Dawar 2023]

3. website - kind - A blog - of - is - a special. [Sohag - Maragha 2023]

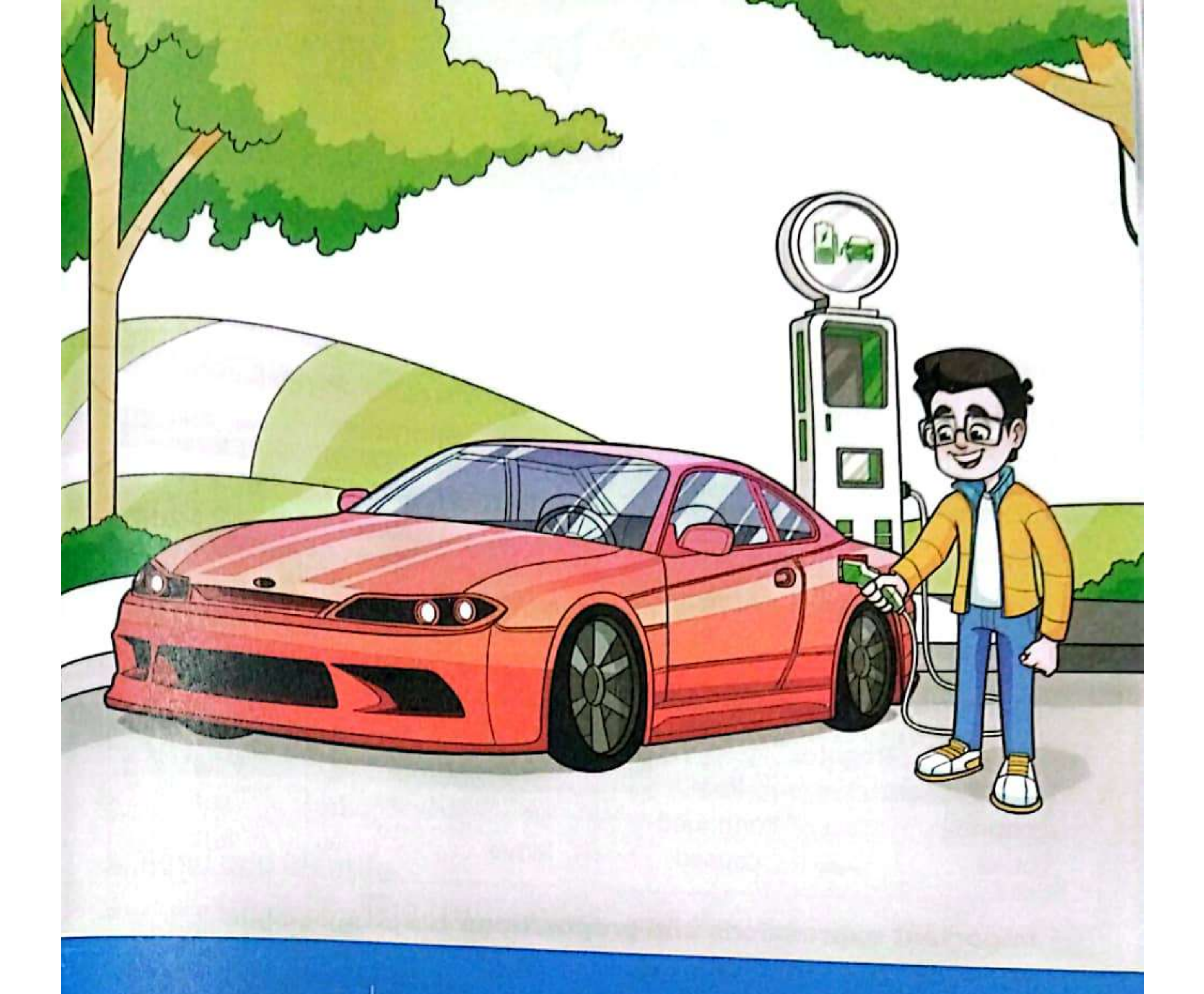
7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following elements.

Social media

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • communicate • online • cyberfriends • password

[Cairo - El-Nozha 2023]



Unit 11

On the road !

على الطريــق !

Aims of Unit Eleven : الأهداف العامة الحادية عشر

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- explore different types of transportation.
  - أكتشف أنواع مختلفة من وسائل المواصلات.
- contrast urban and rural lifestyles.
  - أفرق بين أنماط الحياة الحضرية والريفية.
- learn words connected to transportation.
  - أتعلم كلمات مرتبطة بالنقل.
- review comparative and superlative adjectives.
  - أراجع صفات المقارنة والتفضيل.
- read a text about the history of transportation.
  - أقرأ نص عن تاريخ وسائل النقل.
- read and write a plan for an ideal city and transportation network.
  - أقرأ وأكتب خطة لمدينة مثالية وشبكة وسائل النقل
- listen to a radio show about transportation around the world.
  - أستمع إلى برنامج إذاعي حول وسائل النقل حول العالم.
- talk about different transportation around the world.
  - أتحدث عن وسائل النقل المختلفة حول العالم.
- create a radio show about transportation in Egypt.
  - أنشئ برنامج إذاعي عن وسائل النقل في مصر.

Lesson 1

Transportation



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

traffic	حركة المرور	traffic jam	الازدحام المرورى
trip	رحلة (قصيرة)	destination	الوجهة (المكان المقصود)
traffic lights	إشارات المرور	public transportation	وسائل النقل العام

• Extra vocabulary

activities	أنشطة	exciting	مثير / ممتع	worse	أسوأ
driving	قيادة (حافلات)	seat belt	حزام الأمان	hospital	مستشفى
nowadays	في الوقت الحاضر	east	شرق	journey	رحلة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
continue	يستمر	continued	sit	يجلس	sat
cause	يسبب	caused	leave	يغادر	left

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام	on time	في الوقت المحدد
on my way to	في طريقي إلى	too far	بعيد جدًا
turn left	يتجه يسارًا	Be careful !	كن حذرًا !
set of	مجموعة من	wait for	ينتظر لـ



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I need to wear the seat .... in my car.
   a. belt b. road c. traffic d. trip
2. We had a school .... to the Pyramids last week.
   a. room b. library c. trip d. moon
3. The train will reach its .... in about an hour.
   a. transportation b. destination c. creation d. celebration

Did you know ?
There are more than 1.4 billion vehicles on the Earth. There are about 7.2 million electric cars.
هناك أكثر من ١,٤ مليار مركبة على الأرض. يوجد حوالي ٧,٢ مليون سيارة كهربائية.



Listening and Reading

⭐ Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.


Reem

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation. However, many cities nowadays have a big problem : traffic jam. I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to. We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination you want.

المدن أماكن ممتعة للعيش بها. هناك الكثير من الأنشطة والأشخاص الذين يمكنك مقابلتهم. هناك أيضًا مستشفيات ومدارس ووسائل نقل عام جيدة. ومع ذلك ، تواجه العديد من المدن فى الوقت الحاضر مشكلة كبيرة : الازدحام المرورى! أحب مدينتى ولكن كل صباح علينا الوقوف فى الازدحام المرورى فى طريقى إلى المدرسة. تتوقف السيارات والحافلات ولا يمكننا التحرك. يستغرق الوصول إلى المدرسة ساعة فى بعض الأحيان! غالبًا ما تكون إشارة المرور حمراء مما يجعل حركة المرور أسوأ. نغادر المنزل مبكرًا جدًا حتى أتمكن من الوصول إلى المدرسة فى الوقت المحدد. لا يمكننى القيام بالرحلة سيرًا على الأقدام لأن مدرستى بعيدة جدًا بحيث يتعذر الوصول إليها سيرًا على الأقدام. لدينا مواصلات عامة جيدة. المشكلة هى أن الحافلات لا تذهب دائمًا إلى الوجهة التى تريدها.

⭐ Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

The traffic rules قواعد حركة المرور

1. You must wear your seat belt.



2. You cannot turn left.



3. Be careful. There are animals on the road.



4. Go slow. There are children playing.

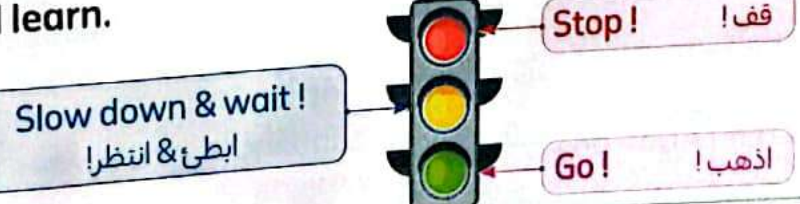


5. Do not continue driving.



⭐ Look and learn.

انظر وتعلم.



Did you know ?
In 1868, the first traffic light was in London in front of the Houses of Parliament.
فى عام ١٨٦٨، كانت أول إشارة مرور فى لندن أمام البرلمان

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My school is too .... to walk to.
   a. far b. near c. big d. clean
2. We have good .... transportation.
   a. electronic b. public c. electric d. slow
3. Buses don't always go to the .... you want.
   a. school b. park c. destination d. club
4. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour because of the .... jam.
   a. people b. traffic c. buses d. bikes

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

lights – early – move – foot

I love my city, but every morning we have to sit in a traffic on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't (1) .... The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour ! The traffic (2) .... are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very (3) ...., so I can make it to school on time.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Don't .... driving when the traffic lights are red.
   a. continuing b. continues c. continue d. to continue
2. Nowadays many cities .... big problems.
   a. has b. is having c. having d. have
3. There .... children playing in the street.
   a. is b. are c. have d. has
4. I'm always late, I .... go to the club on time.
   a. usually b. sometimes c. never d. always
5. You must .... a seat belt.
   a. wear b. wears c. wearing d. wore

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. wear – seat belt – must – You – your car – in – a.
   ....
2. on foot – to – you – Do – go – school ?
   ....
3. to live – Cities – exciting – are – places – in .
   ....

Lesson 2 ▶ Language



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

green spaces	مساحات خضراء	ecological	يخص البيئة / بيئى	residents	سكان/مقيمين
recycling bins	صناديق إعادة التدوير	volunteer	منطوع / يتطوع	urban	حضرى / مدنى
bike paths	ممرات الدراجات	science museum	متحف العلوم	neighborhood	حى

Extra vocabulary

recycle	يعيد تدوير	reduce	يقلل
reuse	يعيد استخدام	translation	ترجمة
garbage = waste	قمامة / مخلفات	cleaner	أكثر نظافة
university	جامعة	future	مستقبل
pick up garbage	يجمع القمامة		

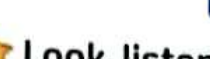
Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

Word	Definition
green spaces	places with lots of plants and trees, such as parks and gardens الأماكن التى بها الكثير من النباتات والأشجار، مثل المتنزهات والحدائق
recycle	use again يُستخدم مرة أخرى
bike paths	special paths which bikes can use مسارات خاصة للدراجات
residents	the people who live in a place الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فى مكان ما
recycling bins	bins where you can put things like glass and paper to be used again سلات حيث يمكنك وضع أشياء مثل الزجاج والورق لاستخدامها مرة أخرى
volunteer	to work for no pay, usually to help someone or something; a volunteer is a person who does this العمل بدون أجر وعادة لمساعدة شخص ما أو شىء ما، المتطوع هو الشخص الذى يفعل ذلك
reduce	to use or have less of something أن يستخدم أو يحصل على القليل من شىء ما
reuse	means to use again يعنى استخدامه مرة أخرى
ecological	relating to looking after animals and the environment كل ما يتعلق برعاية الحيوانات والبيئة

Did you know ?
Students at the University of Fayoum can share bikes from three "bike stations".
يمكن لطلاب جامعة الفيوم مشاركة الدراجات من ثلاث "محطات الدراجات".

II Listening and reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.



[1] مساحات خضراء
[2] ممرات الدراجات
[3] سكان / مواطنين

Dina : Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday ?

دينا : مرحبًا، تاليا. هل ذهبت إلى متحف العلوم مع صفك بالأمس ؟

Talia : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment.

تاليا : نعم، لقد فعلنا ذلك. لقد تعلمت الكثير حول إنشاء بيئة حضرية أكثر نظافة.

Dina : Oh, really ? What did you learn ? دينا : أوه، حقًا ؟ ماذا تعلمتى ؟

Talia : Well, it's important to have **green spaces**[1] in a city. The air is cleaner there. And people are happier when they have green spaces too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water.

تاليا : حسنًا، من المهم وجود مساحات خضراء في المدينة. الهواء أنظف هناك. ويكون الناس أكثر سعادة عندما يكون لديهم مساحات خضراء أيضًا. لذلك، هذا يعنى أننا بحاجة إلى المزيد من الحدائق والأشجار في مدننا. إذا كنا بحاجة إلى رى هذه المساحات الخضراء، فيمكننا إعادة تدوير المياه.

Dina : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we ?

دينا : تبدو لى فكرة جيدة. نحتاج عددًا أقل من السيارات أيضًا، أليس كذلك ؟

Talia : Yes, and we need **bike paths**[2] for people to ride their bikes on.

تاليا : نعم، ونحن بحاجة إلى ممرات للدراجات لكى يركب الناس دراجاتهم عليها.

Dina : I agree. What can **residents**[3] do to help ?

دينا : أوافقك الرأى. ما الذى يمكن للمواطنين فعله للمساعدة ؟

Talia : One of the best things we can do is to use **recycling**[4] bins for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer to **pick up garbage**[5] in parks.

[4] إعادة تدوير
[5] بجمع مهملات
[6] بقلل
[7] بيئى

تاليا : أحد أفضل الأشياء التى يمكننا القيام بها هو استخدام الصناديق المخصصة لإعادة التدوير للزجاج والورق والبلاستيك والمعدن. وعلمت أنه فى بعض الأماكن، يتطوع الناس لجمع القمامة من الحدائق.

Dina : People who throw garbage really make me angry! I'd like to be the best volunteer in my neighborhood!

دينا : الناس الذين يرمون القمامة يجعلوننى غاضبة حقًا ! أود أن أكون أفضل متطوعة فى الحى !

Talia : And do you know about the 3 Rs ?

تاليا : وهل تعرف عن 3 Rs ؟

Dina : I don't think so.

دينا : لا أعتقد ذلك.

Talia : **Reduce**[6], Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce the waste you create. Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones. And recycle everything you can.

تاليا : تقليل وإعادة الاستخدام وإعادة التدوير. قلل من النفايات التى تنتجها. أعد استخدام الأشياء قدر الإمكان قبل شراء أشياء جديدة. وأعد تدوير كل ما تستطيع.

Dina : I hope we can all be more ecological[7] in the future.

دينا : أتمنى أن يكون لدينا اهتمام أكثر بالبيئة فى المستقبل.

Determine the meaning of words and phrases.

حدد معانى الكلمات والعبارات.

Learn

1. The underlined phrase "pick up" means ....
   a. reuse b. throw c. collect d. cut

Practice

2. The underlined word "waste" means ....
   a. garbage b. snack c. path d. board
3. The underlined word "ecological" means related to the ....
   a. future b. environment c. pollution d. family

III Language

Comparative and superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

- An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتى بعد (verb to be).

ex. - He is a short boy. - This car is expensive.

 Comparative صيغة المقارنة

• عند المقارنة بين اثنين (شخصين - شيئين) أحدهما يزيد أو يقل عن الآخر فى نفس الصفة تستخدم :



هى الصفات التى تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad / happy ... etc.

1 تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster / green → greener

ونضيف (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

2 يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

large → larger / close → closer

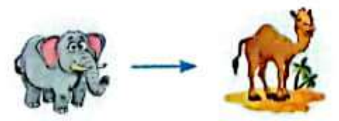
3 يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger - thin → thinner

4 الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (i) ثم تضاف (er):

- easy → easier - lazy → lazier
- friendly → friendlier

ex. - An elephant is bigger than a camel.





هى الصفات التى تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

interesting / fantastic / beautiful / dangerous / expensive ... etc.

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

more أكثر + adj. صفة + than

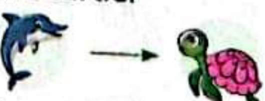
- beautiful → more beautiful than

أكثر جمالًا من

- expensive → more expensive than

أكثر غلاءً من

ex. - The dolphin is more enormous than the turtle.



- Math is more interesting than Arabic.

2 Superlative صيغة التفضيل

• عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة في صفة ما) :
نستخدم صفات التفضيل عند المقارنة بين أكثر من أثنين.



(the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est)

• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

1 يُضاف (the ... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- fast → the fastest - old → the oldest

2 يُضاف (the ... + st) إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):

- large → the largest - close → the closest

3 يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the+ ... est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest
- hot → the hottest - fit → the fittest

4 الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (the + ... iest) :

- easy → the easiest - happy → the happiest
- lazy → the laziest
- healthy → the healthiest

ex. - This bridge is the longest one.
- Heba is the oldest student in her class.



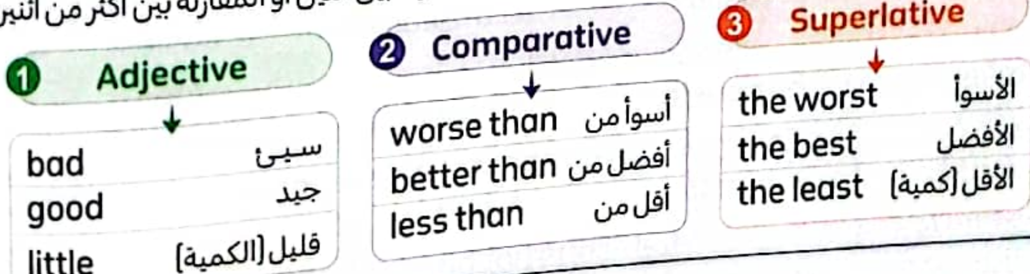
• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

- the most الأكثر + adj. صفة
- the most beautiful الأكثر جمالًا
- the most dangerous الأكثر خطورة

ex. - The whale is the most enormous animal.
- I think maths is the most difficult subject.
- This T-shirt is the most expensive one in the shop.

Irregular comparative and superlative forms صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل غير المنتظمة

• هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :



1 Adjective		2 Comparative		3 Superlative	
bad	سيئ	worse than	أسوأ من	the worst	الأسوأ
good	جيد	better than	أفضل من	the best	الأفضل
little	قليل (الكمية)	less than	أقل من	the least	الأقل (كمية)

3 Prefix

- Prefix is a letter or a group of letters added to the beginning of a word to make a new word. البادئة هي حرف أو مجموعة حروف تضاف لبداية الكلمة لتكون كلمة جديدة.

Prefix البادئة	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة	
re -	"again" مرة أخرى	recycle reuse	يعيد تصنيع يعيد استخدام
un -	"not" لا / غير	unhappy unhealthy unfriendly unpopular	غير سعيد غير صحي غير ودود غير محبوب
dis -	"not" لا / غير	disconnect dislike disagree dishonest	يقطع الاتصال لا يحب لا يوافق غير أمين



Pop Quiz on Language

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My father is .... than my uncle.
   a. old b. oldest c. older d. as old
2. A gold medal is .... than a silver medal.
   a. better b. good c. best d. well
3. Cairo is .... city in Egypt.
   a. the largest b. largest c. larger d. large
4. Football is .... interesting than tennis.
   a. most b. many c. the most d. more
5. The Sahara Desert is .... in the world.
   a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. the big
6. Cars make people's lives .... than before.
   a. easy b. easier c. the easiest d. easiest
7. Who is .... , Mona or Adel ?
   a. taller b. more tall c. most tall d. less tall
8. The .... thing we can do about climate change is to do nothing.
   a. worse b. worst c. bad d. well
9. Reading is .... interesting hobby.
   a. the more b. more c. the most d. most

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's .... to have green spaces in a city.
   a. bad b. important c. ugly d. dangerous
2. People are .... when they have green spaces.
   a. worse b. cheaper c. happier d. larger
3. To water green spaces, we can recycle ....
   a. plastic b. glass c. metal d. water
4. We need bike .... for people to ride their bikes on.
   a. cities b. towns c. paths d. schools

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

fewer – residents – learn – more

Hala: Hey, Dina. Did you go to the science museum yesterday?
Dina: Yes, I did.
Hala: What did you (1) ....?
Dina: Well, it's important to have green spaces.
Hala: We need (2) .... cars too, don't we?
Dina: Yes, and we need bike paths.
Hala: I agree. What can (3) .... do to help?
Dina: One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. pick – must – garbage – We – up.
   ....
2. like – to be – I'd – volunteer – the best.
   ....
3. bigger – a camel – An elephant – than – is.
   ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. What is the .... form of renewable energy?
   a. as cheap b. cheaper c. cheapest d. cheap
2. Solar energy is .... ecological than fossil fuels.
   a. more b. better c. the most d. as
3. An electric car is the .... expensive car.
   a. more b. most c. less d. little
4. Please, ... the computer when you leave the room.
   a. disconnects b. disconnect c. disconnecting d. disconnection
5. Manal is .... than Aya.
   a. taller b. tall c. tallest d. more tall

5 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about how to create a cleaner urban environment. Your name is Seif and your email address is seif@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Fady and his email address is fady@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • green spaces • bike paths • bins • recycle

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

Transportation in the past





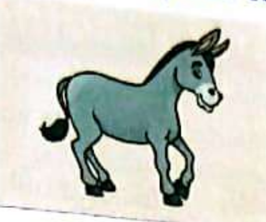
I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

• **Transportation from the past to now** وسائل المواصلات من الماضى إلى الحاضر



walking المشى



a mule بغل



a canoe زورق (قارب صغير)



a wagon مركبة - مقطورة



a steam train قطار بخارى



a subway مترو أنفاق



a rocket صاروخ



an airplane طائرة

• Extra vocabulary

wheel	عجلة	humans	بشر	skiff	مركب شراعى صغير
goods	بضائع	highway	طريق سريع	continent	قارة
oar	مجداف	gasoline	بنزين (الجازولين)	sailboat	مركب شراعى
carts	عربات (كارو)	distance	مسافة	safer	أكثر أمانًا
sail	شراع / إبحار	invention	اختراع	roof	سقف
high-speed train	القطار السريع	green transportation	وسائل مواصلات ملائمة للبيئة	streetcar	ترام
rural areas	مناطق ريفية	direction	اتجاه	cargo	حمولة / شُحنة (ما تحمله أى ناقلة)
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	solar panels	ألواح توليد الطاقة الشمسية		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
invent	يخترع/يبتكر	invented	begin	يبدأ	began
design	يصمم	designed	fly	يطير	flew

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• from one place to another من مكان إلى آخر	• from the beginning of time منذ بداية الزمان
• long time ago منذ زمن طويل	• (be) able to قادر على أن
• through the skies عبر السماوات	• greener airplanes طائرات أكثر ملائمة للبيئة
• run on ... تعمل بـ	

II Listening and reading



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Transportation Then and Now وسائل النقل بين الماضي والحاضر

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of **transportation**[1] for **humans**[2] were walking, running, and swimming.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people still use these means of transportation today. The invention of the **steam engine**[3] changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

[1] وسائل المواصلات
[2] بشر
[3] محرك بخاري
[4] ترام
[5] أنظمة مترو الانفاق
[6] صواريخ

The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first **streetcars**[4] and **subway systems**[5]. The subway in London opened in 1863. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast.

From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in **rockets**[6].

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

النقل هو الطريقة التي ينتقل بها الناس من مكان إلى آخر. إنها أيضًا الطريقة التي ينقل بها الأشخاص الأشياء من مكان إلى آخر. منذ زمن بعيد، كانت وسائل النقل الوحيدة للبشر هي السير على الأقدام والجري والسباحة. بعد ذلك، بدأ البشر في استخدام الحيوانات مثل البغال والحمير والخيول. ثم جاءت القوارب الصغيرة مثل الزوارق وأنواع النقل المائي الأخرى. بمجرد اختراع العجلة، بدأ الناس في استخدام المركبات الصغيرة والعربات.

تمكن المزارعون في البلاد من نقل بضائعهم إلى الأسواق في المدن بسهولة أكثر. في المناطق الريفية، لا يزال الكثير من الناس يستخدمون وسائل النقل هذه اليوم. أدى اختراع المحرك البخاري إلى تغيير طريقة النقل. يمكن للسفن ذات المحركات البخارية أن تسافر أسرع بكثير من استخدام الناس أو الرياح لتحريك القوارب. كان أول قطار بخاري في ويلز في القرن التاسع عشر. قام القطار برحلات أسرع وأكثر أمانًا بين المناطق الريفية والحضرية. ظهرت أول سيارة تعمل بالبنزين أيضًا في القرن التاسع عشر. اشترى الناس سيارات لجعل حياتهم أسهل. مدن مثل لندن وبوسطن لديها بعض من أوائل عربات الترام وأنظمة مترو الأنفاق. تم افتتاح مترو الأنفاق في لندن عام ١٨٦٣. وسرعان ما جعلت القطارات عالية السرعة السفر بين المناطق الريفية والحضرية سريع للغاية. منذ بداية الزمن، كان البشر يراقبون الطيور ويريدون الطيران في السماء. اليوم، نطير من قارة إلى أخرى في مدة لا تزيد عن يوم واحد. حتى أننا قادرون على إرسال الناس إلى القمر في الصواريخ.

مشكلة النقل التي تستخدم البنزين هي أنها تحرق الوقود الحفري، وهي ضارة بالبيئة. لذا اليوم، يطور الناس وسائل نقل أنظف مثل السيارات الكهربائية. حتى أن هناك حافلات كهربائية تستخدم بعض الطاقة الشمسية من الألواح الشمسية على أسطحها. يصمم المهندسون طائرات وسفن ملائمة للبيئة أكثر أيضًا.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

In ancient Egypt, the most important **highway**[1] was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the **major cities**[2] were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation.

Most Egyptians used a small boat called a **skiff** [3]. They made this **simple**[4] boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel **short distances**[5] in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move.

They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large **sail**[6] to catch the wind and they used **oars**[7] to move and **control the direction**[8]. The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

[1] طريق سريع
[2] مدن رئيسية
[3] مركب شراعي صغير
[4] بسيط
[5] مسافات قصيرة
[6] شراع
[7] مجاديف
[8] يتحكم في الاتجاه

في مصر القديمة كان نهر النيل أهم طريق سريع. سافر المصريون في الغالب على طول النهر لأن جميع المدن الرئيسية كانت على طول نهر النيل. لذلك كانت القوارب والسفن هي أهم وسائل النقل. استخدم معظم المصريين زورقًا صغيرًا يسمى مركب شراعي صغير. لقد صنعوا هذا القارب البسيط من ورق البردي والحبل. تمكن الناس من السفر لمسافات قصيرة في هذه القوارب، أو كان يمكنهم استخدامها لصيد الأسماك. استخدموا المجاديف لتحريك القوارب. صنعوا قوارب وسفن أكبر من الخشب. كان لهذه السفن شراع كبير لالتقاط الرياح واستخدموا المجاديف للتحرك والتحكم في الاتجاه. بنى المصريون أنواعًا مختلفة من المراكب للسفر وصيد الأسماك ونقل البضائع.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The invention of the .... engine changed transportation.
   a. water b. steam c. rain d. air
2. The first steam .... was in Wales.
   a. bike b. car c. train d. subway
3. High-speed trains made traveling between .... and urban areas very fast.
   a. rural b. park c. sea d. desert
4. The transportation that uses gasoline is .... for the environment.
   a. bad b. better c. good d. clean

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

papyrus – cities – short – transportation

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major (1) .... were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of (2) .... Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from (3) .... and rope.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. wanted – skies – the – Humans – through – to fly.
   ....
2. could – easily – their – Farmers – goods – transport.
   ....
3. River Nile – the – was – The most – important – highway.
   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Transportation is the way that people **move** from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running,

and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. The first car that ran on gasoline appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first streetcars and subway systems.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about " .... ".
   a. Sports b. Health c. Transportation d. Teaching
2. The underlined word "move" means ....
   a. play b. travel c. try d. sleep
3. Humans used animals like .... and donkeys for transportation.
   a. cats b. lions c. bears d. mules

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What were the first types of transportation for humans ?

....

5. Why did people buy cars ?

....

• 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Problems of transportation

Guiding elements :

What is the problem with transportation that uses gasoline ?
What are the cleanest forms of transportation ?
How can the greener airplanes help with this problem ?

....

....

....

....

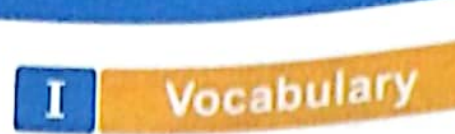
....

....

....

Lesson 4

Writing



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

route	طريق / مسار	shade	ظل
waterway	ممر / مجرى مائي	nuclear	نووي
water vapor	بخار ماء	opinion	رأي
canal	قناة مائية	ferry	عبّارة نهرية

• Extra vocabulary

ideal	مثالي	wind farm	مزرعة (محطة) الرياح	personally	شخصيًا
driverless	ذاتي القيادة (بدون سائق)	louder	أكثر ارتفاعًا (للصوت)	electric cabs	سيارات أجرة كهربائية
power	طاقة / قوة	hydrogen gas	غاز الهيدروجين	quieter	أكثر هدوئًا
vehicles	مركبات	warm air	هواء دافئ	cooler	أكثر برودة
palm tree	شجرة النخيل				

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
locate on	يقع في	located on	protect	يحمي	protected
believe	يصدق	believed	produce	ينتج	produced

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

Word	Definition
roof	the top part of a building الجزء العلوي من المبنى
canal	a long area of water, made for boats to travel on مساحة كبيرة من المياه مخصصة لسفر القوارب
waterway	the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake الطرق المختلفة التي يستخدمها الناس للتنقل عبر الماء مثل مياه النهر، أو القناة المائية أو البحيرة
water vapor	water in the form of gas ماء في الحالة الغازية



II Listening and reading

Sherif's plan for an ideal city

1. My Ideal City مدينتي المثالية



My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

١. تقع مدينتي على نهر النيل. هناك منازل ومدارس ومستشفى جديدة. توجد أيضًا حديقة كبيرة حيث يمكن للناس الذهاب للتنزه وممارسة الرياضة. أعتقد أن الحدائق مهمة للجميع. كل الكهرباء في مدينتي تأتي من مزرعة طاقة شمسية في الصحراء. تحتوي المنازل الجديدة على ألواح شمسية على أسطحها أيضًا. توجد أشجار نخيل حول المنازل لمساعدتها على البقاء أكثر برودة. في رأيي، الطاقة الشمسية أفضل من حرق الوقود الحفري لأنها أفضل للبيئة.

2. Water transportation وسائل النقل المائية

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

٢. هناك نظام عبارات نهرية جديد رائع ينقل الناس إلى أعلى وأسفل النهر. تستخدم القوارب البيئية الجديدة كلًا من طاقة الرياح والطاقة الكهربائية. يمكن أن تستخدم العبارة النهرية أيضًا القنوات الجديدة. يمكن للمواطنين استخدام نظام العبارات النهرية للتجول في المدينة. أنا شخصيًا أعتقد أنه من المهم للغاية حماية الممرات المائية لدينا. إذا استخدمنا قوارب أكثر ملائمة للبيئة، فيمكننا فعل ذلك. هذه القوارب البيئية أكثر هدوءًا من القوارب الأخرى أيضًا.

3. Land transportation وسائل النقل البرية

All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths. They go along the river and everywhere else in my city.

٣. كل هذا النقل أصبح الآن أكثر بيئية. توجد سيارات أجرة تعمل بالكهرباء، لكن ليس بها سائقين لأنها تعمل بلا سائق. أنا متأكد من أن الهواء سيكون أنظف إذا استخدمنا السيارات الكهربائية. لدينا أيضًا حافلات تستخدم الطاقة من غاز الهيدروجين. مما أعرفه، لا تنتج مركبات الهيدروجين أي غازات خطيرة. هم فقط ينتجون الهواء الدافئ وبخار الماء. يمكنك ركوب دراجتك في جميع أنحاء المدينة على مسارات الدراجات. يذهبون على طول النهر وفي كل مكان آخر في مدينتي.

Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

My Green City مدينتى الصديقة للبيئة

By Hana



My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments, schools, two museums, and a hospital. There are a lot of green spaces where people can go for walks, ride their bikes, and enjoy being in nature. Personally, I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city. There are also large trees in all the streets to provide shade.

تقع مدينتى المثالية على ساحل البحر الأحمر. هناك منازل وشقق ومدارس ومتحفان ومستشفى. هناك الكثير من المساحات الخضراء حيث يمكن للناس التنزه وركوب الدراجات والاستمتاع بالطبيعة. أنا شخصيًا أعتقد أن المساحات الخضراء هى أهم جزء فى المدينة. كما توجد أشجار كبيرة فى جميع الشوارع لتوفير الظل.

Clean Energy

Most of the electricity for the city comes from a wind farm on the coast. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that generate electricity. Many buildings have solar panels. In my opinion, all buildings should have solar panels on their roofs. I am sure that people will stop using fossil fuels soon because renewable energy is cleaner.

- الطاقة النظيفة : تأتى معظم الكهرباء للمدينة من مزرعة رياح على الساحل. تحتوى مزرعة الرياح على ١٢ توربين رياح تولد الكهرباء. تحتوى العديد من المبانى على ألواح شمسية. فى رأيى، يجب أن تحتوى جميع المبانى على ألواح شمسية على أسطحها. أنا متأكد من أن الناس سيتوقفون عن استخدام الوقود الحفرى قريبًا لأن الطاقة المتجددة أنظف.

Transportation for Goods and People

There is a system of canals in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike paths. The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation. Electric canal boats carry goods across the city, so there are fewer trucks on the road. The residents travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs. All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.

نقل البضائع والأشخاص : يوجد نظام من القنوات فى مدينتى مع مسارات للدراجات بجوارها. أعتقد أن المزيد من الناس سيركبون دراجاتهم إذا كان هناك المزيد من مسارات الدراجات. توفر القنوات المزيد من المساحات الخارجية ليستمتع بها الناس، ولكنها توفر أيضًا وسائل النقل. تنقل قوارب القناة الكهربائية البضائع عبر المدينة، لذلك هناك عدد أقل من الشاحنات على الطريق. ينتقل السكان فى جميع أنحاء المدينة على متن حافلات كهربائية، الترام وسيارات الاجرة الكهربائية. كل وسائل المواصلات كهربائية وبالتالى يقل التلوث وتكون الشوارع أكثر هدوءًا ونظافة.



III Writing skill

Write a plan for your ideal city. اكتب خطة لمدينتك المثالية.

Remember to : تذكر أن

- Describe your ideal city. - صف مدينتك المثالية.
- Explain the transportation and how it is better for the environment. - اشرح وسائل النقل وإلى أى مدى هى جيدة للبيئة.
- Write a heading for each paragraph. - اكتب عنوان لكل فقرة.
- Use expressions for giving your opinion like : - استخدم التعبيرات لإبداء رأيك مثل :

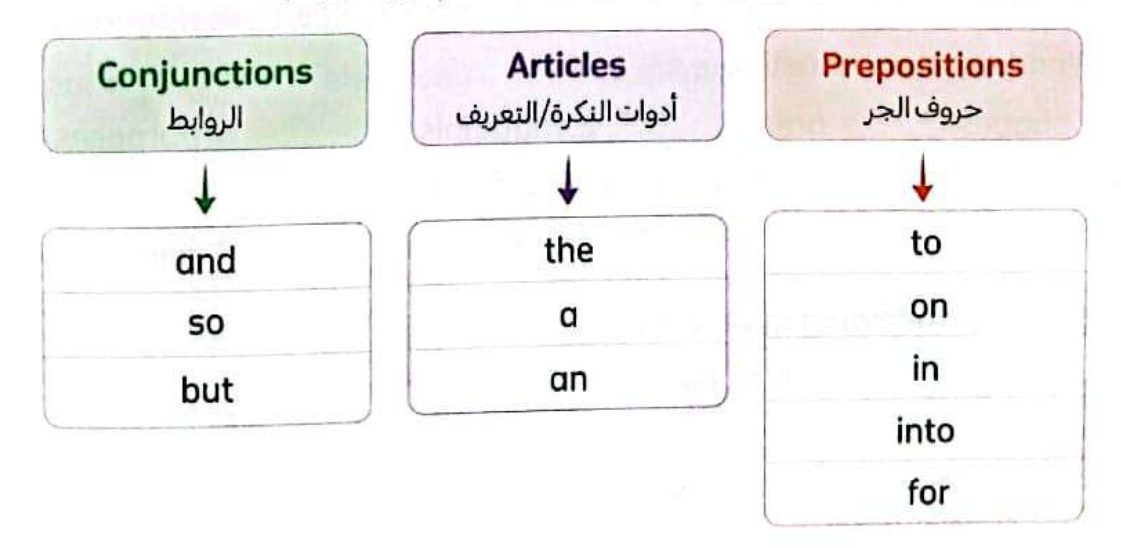
I believe that ... أعتقد	In my opinion, ... فى رأيى،	Personally, I think ... شخصيًا، أعتقد.....
I am sure that ... أنا متأكد أن...............	From what I know, ... مما أعرفه،	

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم

1. When you write a heading, you use capital letters for the important words.
2. You don't have to use capital letters for conjunctions, articles, or prepositions.

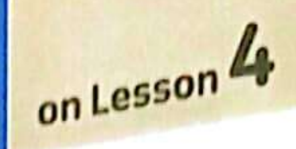
١. عندما تكتب عنوانًا، استخدم حروف كبيرة للكلمات الهامة.

٢. أما الروابط وأدوات النكرة والتعريف وحروف الجر ليس علينا استخدام حروف كبيرة لها.



Conjunctions الروابط	Articles أدوات النكرة/التعريف	Prepositions حروف الجر
and	the	to
so	a	on
but	an	in
		into
		for

General Exercises





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There is a large .... where people can go for walks.
   a. beach b. park c. street d. home
2. All the electricity in my city comes from .... energy in the desert.
   a. solar b. water c. electric d. wind
3. The homes have solar panels on their ....
   a. doors b. rooms c. roofs d. gardens
4. There are .... trees around the houses to help them stay cooler.
   a. orange b. lemon c. mango d. palm

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are renewable resources because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. animals b. potatoes c. natural resources d. materials
2. Wood, wool and plastic are all ....
   a. shapes b. areas c. materials d. purposes
3. Natural resources are materials we get from ....
   a. coal b. air c. nature d. rain

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Can farmers raise more animals ?

   ....

5. Why are the potatoes renewable resources ?

   ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. on – is – River Nile – My city – the – located.

....

2. are – for – Parks – everyone – important.

....

3. cabs – have – Electric – any – drivers – don't.

....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

loud – electric – quieter – canals

There is a great new ferry system. The new ecological boats use both wind power and (1).............. energy. The ferry can also use the new (2).............. . Personally, I think it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are (3).............. than other boats.

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your plan for an ideal city

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- parks
- electricity
- ecological
- vehicles

....

....

....

....

....

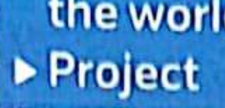
....

....

....

....

Lessons



- Transportation around the world
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

snowstorm	عاصفة ثلجية	a train	قطار
a cab	سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)	a snowmobile	دراجة جليدية

Extra vocabulary

gasoline	البنزين (الجازولين)	expensive	غالٍ	radio show	برنامج إذاعي
litter	قمامة	guest	ضيف	underground	تحت الأرض
Netherlands	هولندا (دولة في أوروبا)	the United States	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	host	مضيف
monsoon	أمطار موسمية (غزيرة)	advantages	مزايا	Bangladesh	بنجلاديش (دولة في جنوب آسيا)
disadvantages	عيوب	get wet	يبتل	travel around	يتجول
island	جزيرة				

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

Word	Definition
streetcar	This travels around a town or city. ينتقل حول البلدة أو المدينة. It can carry about 40 people. يحمل حوالي 40 شخص. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric. لا يستخدم البنزين. إنه كهربي.
ferry	This takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. تنقل الناس أو البضائع عبر الأنهار، البحيرات والبحار. It can be quite small or very big. ممكن أن يكون صغيرة قليلًا أو كبيرة جدًا.
subway	This travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. هذا يسافر تحت الأرض. يستخدمه الناس للسفر حول المدن. It's fast and it isn't expensive. إنه سريع وليس باهظ الثمن.
cab	This transports people on roads around cities or towns. هذه تنقل الناس عبر الطرقات حول المدن والبلدان. It can be expensive. ممكن أن تكون باهظة الثمن.

• Help your child read and identify the definition of each word. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة.

II Audioscript

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.



Welcome back, everyone. Now we are going take calls from some of our listeners. We want to know how children get to school where you live. Are there any advantages or disadvantages ? Hello, you're our first caller.

أهلًا بكم من جديد. الآن نحن بصدد تلقي مكالمات من بعض مستمعينا. نريد أن نعرف كيف يذهب الأطفال إلى المدرسة حيث تعيش. هل هناك مزايا أو عيوب؟ مرحبًا أنت أول متصل.

Astrid

Hi, this is Astrid from the Netherlands. A lot of children ride their bikes to school in my country. I think something like 75% of children actually. As you might know, the Netherlands is a very flat country,so it is easy to ride a bike – you don't have to go up any big hills or mountains. There are also a lot of bike paths. An advantage is that you exercise on the way to school . Another advantage is that it is good for the environment. A disadvantage is the weather –the Netherlands is a very rainy country so sometimes we get wet. My cousins live in Belgium, and they ride bikes to school too.

مرحبًا، أنا أستريد من هولندا. يركب الكثير من الأطفال دراجاتهم إلى المدرسة في بلدي. أعتقد ما يقرب من ٧٥٪ من الأطفال في الواقع. كما تعلم، فإن هولندا بلد خالية من التضاريس، لذلك من السهل ركوب الدراجة. لست مضطرًا إلى الصعود إلى أي تلال أو جبال كبيرة. يوجد أيضًا الكثير من مسارات الدراجات. الميزة هي أنك تمارس الرياضة في طريقك إلى المدرسة. ميزة أخرى هي أنها مفيدة للبيئة. العيب هو الطقس. هولندا بلد ممطر للغاية لذا في بعض الأحيان نبتل. يعيش أبناء عمومتي في بلجيكا، وهم يركبون الدراجات إلى المدرسة أيضًا.

Host

Thank you, Astrid. Now for our next caller. شكرًا لكِ يا أستريد. الآن المتصل التالي.

Ethan

Hi there. I'm Ethan and I'm calling from Vermont in the United States. Children here usually take a school bus. We live in the mountains, and in the winter there's a lot of snow. It's too far to walk to school if you live in the country. School buses are good because they can travel long distances and keep children safe and warm. An advantage is that the school buses can carry a lot of children at the same time.

A disadvantage is that they can't drive when there is a big snowstorm. So, sometimes school is closed on those days. Another disadvantage is that the buses use gasoline. I hope we get electric buses soon.

أهلًا. أنا إيثان وأنا أتصل من ولاية فيرمونت في الولايات المتحدة. عادة ما يستقل الأطفال هنا حافلة مدرسية. نحن نعيش في الجبال، وفي الشتاء تتساقط الثلوج بكثرة. إنه بعيد جدًا الذهاب إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام إذا كنت تعيش في البلد. تعتبر الحافلات المدرسية جيدة لأنها يمكن أن تسافر لمسافات طويلة وتحافظ على سلامة الأطفال ودفئهم. الميزة هي أن الحافلات المدرسية يمكن أن تحمل الكثير من الأطفال في نفس الوقت. العيب هو أنهم لا يستطيعون القيادة عندما تكون هناك عاصفة ثلجية كبيرة. لذلك، أحيانًا تكون المدرسة مغلقة في تلك الأيام. عيب آخر هو أن الحافلات تستخدم البنزين. آمل أن نحصل على حافلات كهربائية قريبًا.


شكرًا إيثان المتصل التالي، من فضلك.



Thanks, Ethan. Next caller, please.

Malti

Good afternoon. My name's Malti and I'm from Bangladesh. In Bangladesh, children use different kinds of transportation to get to school, like buses. But a lot of people also use boats. This may surprise you, but my school is on a boat. In the morning, the children wait for the boat to arrive. We all get on and then pick up more children. Finally, we stop the boat on the side of the river and have our classes.
Boats are good here because there is a lot of water. When there are the heavy rains, called monsoons, the roads are even underwater and you have to use a boat. One advantage of my school boat is that every child can go to it – even if their parents don't have a boat. One disadvantage is that we don't have a playground, so we play on the boat.

طاب مسائك. اسمي مالتي وأنا من بنجلاديش. في بنجلاديش يستخدم الأطفال أنواعًا مختلفة من وسائل النقل للوصول إلى المدرسة، مثل الحافلات. لكن الكثير من الناس يستخدمون القوارب أيضًا. قد يفاجئك هذا، لكن مدرستي على متن قارب. في الصباح، ينتظر الأطفال وصول القارب. نركب جميعًا ثم نلتقط المزيد من الأطفال. أخيرًا، توقف القارب على جانب النهر ونأخذ دروسنا. القوارب جيدة هنا لأن هناك الكثير من المياه. عندما تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة، تسمى بالأمطار الموسمية، تكون الطرق حتى تحت الماء وعليك استخدام قارب. تتمثل إحدى ميزات قارب مدرستي في أنه يمكن لكل طفل الذهاب إليه - حتى لو لم يكن لدى والديهم قارب. عيب واحد هو أنه ليس لدينا ملعب، لذلك نلعب على متن القارب.

Hi. My name's Amy and I live in Mackinac island. It's a very small island in Lake Michigan in the US. It's a popular tourist destination. People like to take canoe trips on the lake in the summer, or they ride bikes around the island. The island is unusual because there are no cars and no buses. In winter it's very cold for 5 or 6 months and it snows heavily, so we can't ride our bikes to school like we do in summer. So, in winter we travel to school by snowmobile. My dad drives the snowmobile and I sit behind him. It's fun, and it's more exciting than riding a bike.

Amy

أهلًا. اسمي إيمي وأنا أعيش في جزيرة ماكيناك. إنها جزيرة صغيرة جدًا في بحيرة ميشيجان في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. إنها مقصد سياحي شهير. يحب الناس القيام برحلات الزورق في البحيرة في الصيف، أو ركوب الدراجات في جميع أنحاء الجزيرة. الجزيرة غير عادية لأنه لا توجد سيارات ولا حافلات. في الشتاء يكون الجو باردًا جدًا لمدة ٥ أو ٦ شهور وتمطر ثلوجًا بغزارة، لذلك لا يمكننا ركوب دراجاتنا إلى المدرسة كما نفعل في الصيف. لذلك، في الشتاء نسافر إلى المدرسة بواسطة الدراجة الجليدية. والدي يقود عربة الثلج وأنا أجلس خلفه. إنه ممتع وهو أكثر إثارة من ركوب الدراجة.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.**

park – fast – near – type

Samy : How do you get to school, Adel ?
Adel : By bus.
Samy : Why don't you go by bike ?
Adel : Because my school isn't (1) .... my house.
Samy : Which (2) .... of transportation do people use in your city ?
Adel : Most people use the subway.
Samy : Why ?
Adel : Because it is (3) .... and not expensive.

2 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. can – water – You – travel – on.

....

2. are – advantages – What – the – a subway – of ?

....

3. of – ride – A lot – children – their – to school – bikes.

....

3 **Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.**

Types of transportation

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

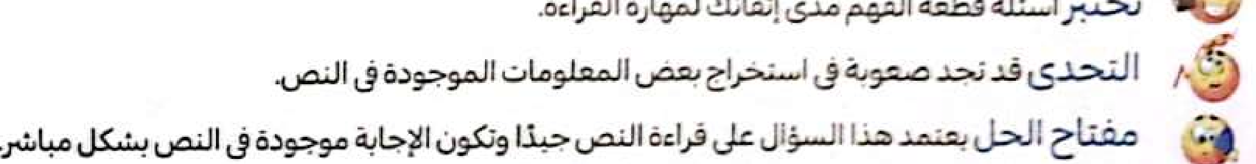
- How do you get to school every day ?
- Which types of transportation do people use in your country ?
- Why is it better to use electric cars ?

....
....
....
....
....
....



UNIT 11 | 1 Reading comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج بعض المعلومات الموجودة في النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة

Read and learn how to answer :

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile.The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile.So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing.

شرح الحل تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

1. The most important .... was the River Nile.
   a. streetcar b. highway c. subway d. rocket
2. Ancient Egyptians made a simple .... from papyrus and rope.
   a. car b. ship c. boat d. bus

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى

Read and answer the questions :

It's important to have green spaces in a city. The air is cleaner there, and people are happier when they have green spaces, too. So, that means we need more plants and trees in our cities. Trees give us clean air. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water. We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on.

1. .... give us clean air.
   a. Trees b. Cars c. Buses d. Airplanes
2. We need bike paths for people to .... their bikes on.
   a. reduce b. ride c. recycle d. invite

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [مدينتى الملائمة للبيئة] و [وسائل النقل] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
My green city	▶ Write the meaning : شقق سكنية .... ساحل .... أشجار .... مساحات .... مثالى .... نقى	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. My ideal city is located on the Red Sea .... 2. There are houses, ... , schools and a hospital. 3. There're a lot of green .... 4. There're also large .... in all the streets to provide shade.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "My green city" ....
Transportation	طريق .... عامة .... ازدحام مرورى .... وسائل نقل .... وجهة وصول .... رحلة	1. The trains, cars, buses are forms of .... 2. .... is a big problem. 3. The .... to school sometimes takes us an hour. 4. We have good .... transportation.	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "Transportation" ....

Skills 3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل لتساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Transportation	destination	The train will reach its destination in about an hour.
	traffic jam	Our car is in a traffic jam, so we're moving very slowly.
	traffic lights	You must stop at the traffic lights when the light is red.
	traffic	All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of traffic.
	on foot	Dad likes walking, so he always goes to work on foot.
My Green City	coast	My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast.
	apartments	There are houses and apartments, schools and a hospital.
	green spaces	There're a lot of green spaces.
	important	I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city.
	large trees	There're also large trees in all the streets to provide shade.
Transportation in the past	highway	In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile.
	boats - ships	Boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation.
	skiff	Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff.
	papyrus	They made simple boats from papyrus and rope.
	oars	They used oars to make the boats move.
Clean energy	wind farm	Most of the electricity comes from a wind farm on the coast.
	generate	The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that generate electricity.
	solar panels	Many buildings have solar panels.
	cleaner	Renewable energy is cleaner.
	fossil fuels	I'm sure people will stop using fossil fuels soon.
Traffic rules	slowly	Drive slowly.
	seat belt	You must wear your seat belt.
	road	Be careful. There are animals on the road.
	turn left	You can't turn left.





تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

1 Traffic

Many cities nowadays have a big problem : traffic.[1] The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse.[2] We must stop at the traffic lights when the light is red.[3] We have good public transportation.[4] The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination you want.[5] If there is a traffic jam, we will move very slowly.[6]

2 Transportation in ancient Egypt

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile.[7] The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile.[8] So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation.[9] Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff.[10] They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope.[11] People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing.[12]

3 The cleanest form of transportation

There is a system of canals in my city with bike paths next to them.[13] I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike paths.[14] The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation.[15] Electric canal boats carry goods across the city, so there are fewer trucks on the road.[16] The residents travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs.[17] All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.[18]

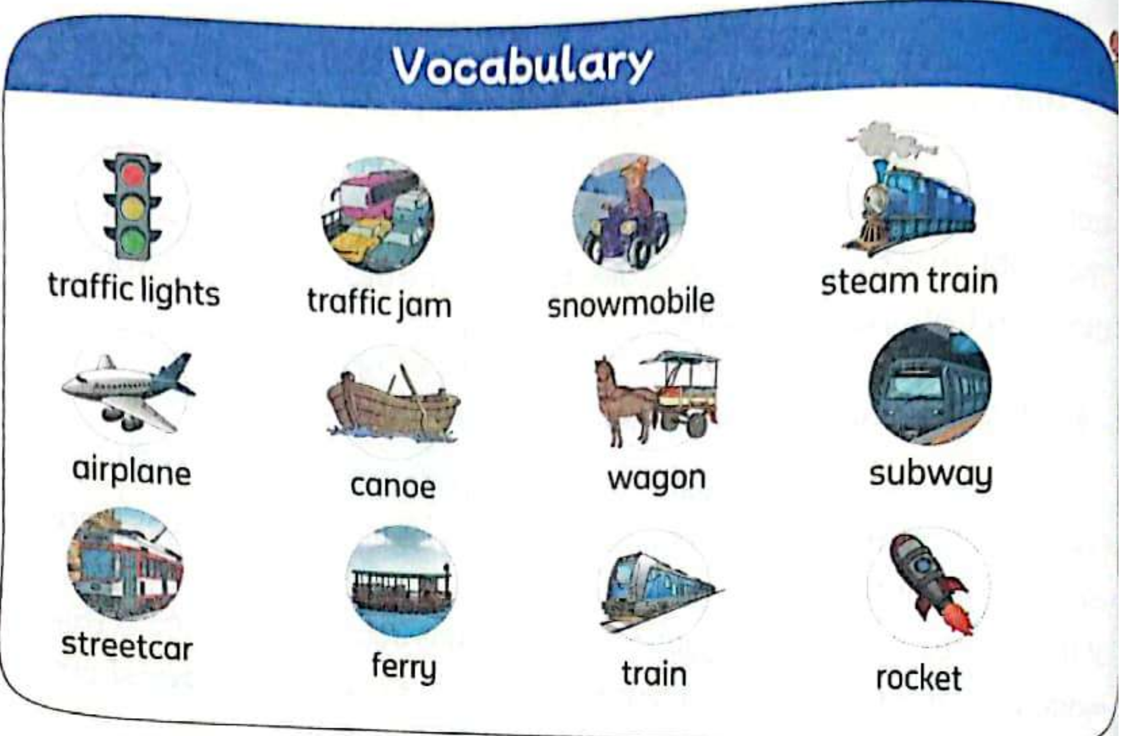
4 Green spaces

It's important to have green spaces in a city.[19] The air is cleaner there, and people are happier when they have green spaces too.[20] So, that means we need more plants and trees in our cities.[21] Trees give us clean air.[22] If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water.[23] We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on.[24]

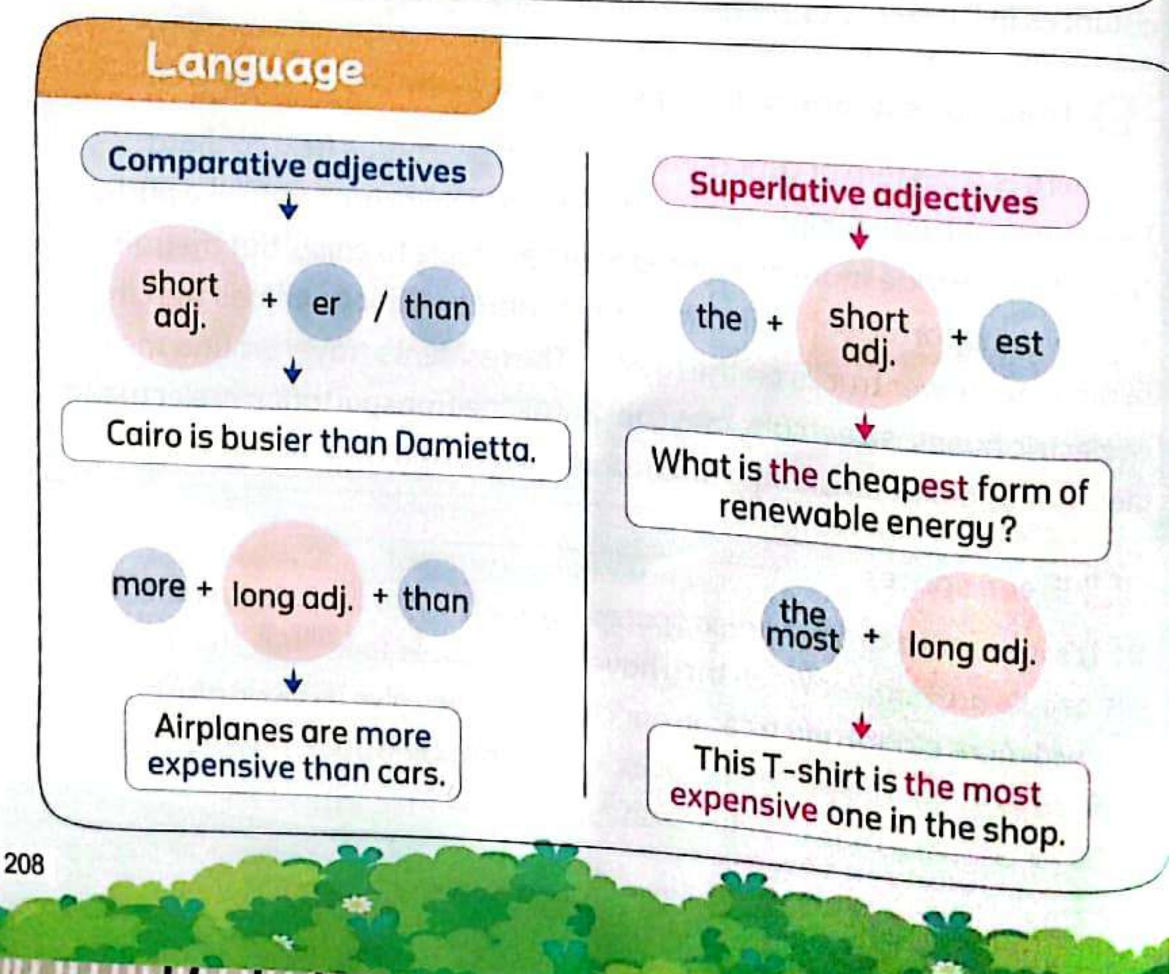
Review on unit 11

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الحادية عشر فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary



Language



Test 9 on Unit 11

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In ancient Egypt, the most important .... was the River Nile.
   a. subway b. highway c. railway d. way
2. All the major cities were along the ....
   a. desert b. coast c. Red Sea d. River Nile
3. .... and boats were the most important forms of transportation in ancient Egypt.
   a. Ships b. Trains c. Planes d. Carts
4. The skiff is a simple boat from .... and rope.
   a. metal b. silk c. wood d. papyrus

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

goods – paths – cleaner – spaces

There is a system of canals in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike (1) .... The canals provide more outdoor (2) .... for people to enjoy, and they also provide transportation. Electric canal boats carry (3) .... across the city, so there are fewer trucks on the road.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Cities are exciting places to live in. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation. However, many cities nowadays have a big problem : traffic. I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about the problem of ".....................".
   a. pollution b. traffic c. flood d. drought
2. The trip to school sometimes takes .... minutes.
   a. twenty b. forty c. sixty d. ten
3. The underlined word "worse" means very ....
   a. good b. bad c. easy d. nice

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Why are cities exciting ?
   ....
5. Can the writer walk to school ? Why ?
   ....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The seagull had four babies. ( )
2. Waleed met Amir at the cinema. ( )

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir is a .... boy.
   a. lazy b. smart c. noisy d. messy
2. Amir took the laundry up to the ....
   a. balcony b. garden c. roof d. living room

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Cats are .... than tigers.
   a. friend b. friendlier c. friendly d. friendliest
2. Noha is crying. She is ....
   a. happy b. happiness c. unhappy d. happier
3. Do you know the .... animal in the world ?
   a. slower b. slower than c. slowest d. slowly
4. Last party was the .... party ever.
   a. good b. well c. better d. best
5. Our house is .... beautiful than yours.
   a. most b. more c. the most d. lots

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. everything - recycle - Try - to.

....

2. than - is - An electric car - expensive - more - a bike.

....

3. trees - There're - palm - streets - in all.

....

7 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about transportation. Your name is Hany and your email address is hany@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Maged. Your friend's email address is maged@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • electric • driverless • produce

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

Test 10 on Unit 11

Collected From Governorates Examinations

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The world needs lots of ....
   a. animals b. sweets c. land d. trees
2. Trees take out .... from the air.
   a. carbon dioxide b. oxygen c. water d. oil
3. People cut down trees to build ....
   a. school b. zoos c. homes d. towers
4. It's .... to plant new trees.
   a. useless b. important c. unhappy d. wrong

(Giza – Dokki 2023)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

tour – along – important – highway

Mazen : What is your favorite form of transportation ?
Adel : I like boats.
Mazen : Do you know boats were very (1) .... in ancient Egypt ?
Adel : That's right. Do you know why ?
Mazen : Because the most important (2) .... was the River Nile.
Adel : Yes. They traveled mostly (3) .... the river.
Mazen : I will go to Luxor in a big ship.
Adel : That is very exciting.

(Dakahlia – Belqas 2023)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Cities are **exciting** places to live in. There are a lot of activities to do and a lot of people to meet. One of the biggest problems in cities is traffic. Cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes an hour. The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic worse. I can't make the trip on foot because the school is too far to walk to.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The school is too .... to walk to.
   a. near b. far c. clean d. tidy
2. One of the biggest problems in cities is ....
   a. traffic b. parks c. restaurants d. libraries
3. The underlined word "**exciting**" means very ....
   a. nice b. boring c. bad d. hard

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How much time does the trip to school take ?

....

5. What makes the traffic worse?

....

[Alexandria - Borj El-Arab 2023]

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his tablet. ( )
2. Too much plastic is good for the birds. ( )

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amir's .... volunteered to help them.
   a. grandma b. uncle c. father d. aunt
2. Amir could see the Nile from the ....
   a. window b. roof c. kitchen d. living room

[Ismailia - El-Tal Al-Kabir 2023]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Sahara Desert is .... in the world. [Qena 2023]
   a. bigger b. biggest c. the biggest d. big
2. The sun is the .... form of renewable energy. [Cairo - Old Cairo 2023]
   a. cheapest b. cheap c. cheaper d. as cheap
3. A gold medal is .... a silver medal. [Sharkia - Belbis 2023]
   a. as good b. good c. better d. better than
4. Cairo is .... than Damietta. [Qalyobia - Benha 2023]
   a. the busiest b. busy c. busier d. busiest
5. Cities are .... polluted than towns. [Aswan - Edfu 2023]
   a. most b. more c. the most d. much

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. important - plastic - recycle - It's - to. [Kafr El Sheikh 2023]

....

2. every day - do - go - How - you - to - school? [Giza - Dokki 2023]

....

3. many - have - We - types - transportation - of. [Qena - Qena 2023]

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Transportation in ancient Egypt"

Guiding elements:

• highway • ships • skiff • short distances [Aswan - Edfu 2023]

....

....



Unit 12 A global challenge

تحدى عالمى

Aims of Unit Twelve : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية عشر

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- learn about geology and climate change.
  - اتعلم عن الجيولوجيا وتغير المناخ.
- review the first conditional.
  - اراجع الحالة الشرطية الأولى.
- read a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change.
  - اقرأ تقرير صحفى حول كيفية عمل الدول معًا لإبطاء تغير المناخ
- write a newspaper report about what causes climate change.
  - اكتب تقرير صحفى حول أسباب تغير المناخ.
- listen to a talk about food supplies around the world.
  - استمع إلى حديث حول الإمدادات الغذائية حول العالم.
- perform a role play about shopping responsibly.
  - اقوم بتبادل الأدوار حول التسوق بطريقة مسئولة.
- plan a plant-based meal.
  - اخطط لوجبة نباتية.

Lesson 1

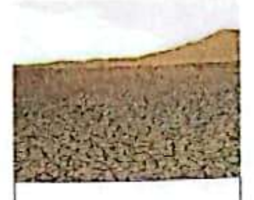
▶ Rocks and stones



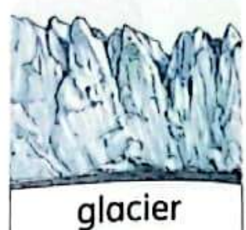
I Vocabulary

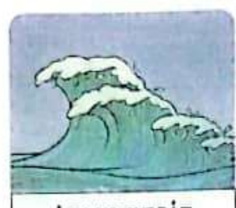
• Key vocabulary


erosion
تعرية / تآكل


drought جفاف


flood فيضان


glacier
نهر جليدى / جليد


tsunamis
موجات المد [تسونامى]


landslide
انهيار أرضى

• Extra vocabulary

geology	الجيولوجيا [علم طبقات الأرض]	limestone	الحجر الجيرى
heavy agriculture	الزراعة الكثيفة	result	نتيجة
exposure	تعرض - كشف	sea level	مستوى سطح البحر
smooth	أملس - ناعم	acid	حامض
current	تيار مائى - جارى	riverbank	ضفة النهر
waves	أمواج	marble	رخام
process	عملية	natural	طبيعى
water shortage	نقص فى المياه	flow	تيار مياه / تدفق

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
erode	يتقلص / يتآكل	eroded
damage	يدمر	damaged

Irregular

Present		Past
rise	يرتفع	rose
become	يصبح	became

Did you know ?

Nearly 71% of the surface of the Earth is water. About 95% of all the water is salt water.

- ما يقرب من ٧١٪ من سطح الأرض عبارة عن ماء حوالى ٩٥٪ من الماء كله ماء مالح

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from	ينتقل من	result in	يؤدى إلى
for a long time	لفترة طويلة	in danger	فى خطر

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
tsunami	when a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave عندما ينفجر بركان تحت سطح البحر، ينتج عن ذلك موجة ضخمة
glacier	is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land هو تدفق جليدى ضخم يتحرك ببطء شديد عبر الأرض
environment	is the people and things that are around you هم الأشخاص والأشياء الموجودة حولك
heavy agriculture	means that there is too much farming يعنى أن هناك الكثير من الزراعة

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... happens when a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave.
   a. Agriculture b. Tsunami
   c. Drought d. Water shortage
2. .... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.
   a. Flood b. Erosion c. Glacier d. Landslide
3. .... happens when there is not enough rain for a long time.
   a. Climate change b. Drought c. Rain d. Soil
4. The .... is the people and things that are around you.
   a. drought b. river bank c. environment d. sea level

Did you know ?

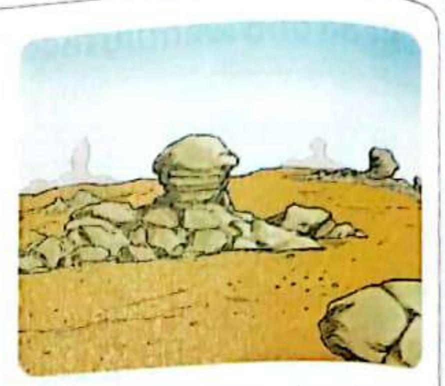
The Sphinx is made of a large piece of a type of stone called limestone. Acid rain damages limestone and another stone called marble. So, acid rain can also damage the Sphinx.

- يتكون أبو الهول من قطعة كبيرة من نوع من الحجر تسمى الحجر الجيرى. تسبب الأمطار الحمضية فى إتلاف الحجر الجيرى وحجر آخر يسمى الرخام. لذلك، يمكن للأمطار الحمضية أن تلحق الضرر بأبو الهول.

II Listening and Reading



 **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.



Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows - floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.



Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

التعرية عملية طبيعية. يحدث ذلك عندما تنتقل الصخور والتربة من مكان إلى آخر بواسطة المياه أو الرياح أو التدفقات. يمكن أن تؤدي الأمواج والتيارات في البحر إلى تآكل الشواطئ، ويمكن أن تؤدي الأنهار إلى تآكل ضفاف الأنهار، كما يمكن أن تتسبب الأمطار الغزيرة أو الرياح في تآكل الأرض. أنواع مختلفة من التدفقات - الفيضانات، والانهيارات الأرضية، وأمواج تسونامي، أو الأنهار الجليدية تؤدي أيضًا إلى تآكل الأرض. يمكن أن يتسبب البشر أيضًا في التآكل. الزراعة الثقيلة هي إحدى الطرق التي يقوم بها الناس بهذا. يعد حرق الوقود الحفري طريقة أخرى لأنه يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ. يتسبب تغير المناخ في ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر مما يؤدي إلى المزيد من التعرية.

الجفاف يحدث في حالة عدم وجود أمطار كافية لفترة طويلة. عندما يحدث هذا، تجف الأنهار والبحيرات. لا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الطعام وستصبح الطبيعة في خطر. عندما لا يتوفر لدى الناس كل المياه التي يحتاجون إليها، نقول إن هناك نقصًا في المياه.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. Why is burning fossil fuels dangerous ?
- Because it results in climate change.

Practice 2. What's a water shortage ?

....

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Erosion is a/an .... process.
   a. human b. electric c. natural d. personal
2. The waves and currents in the sea can erode ....
   a. beaches b. limestone c. desert d. clouds
3. Heavy .... or winds can cause the land to erode.
   a. rocks b. soil c. rains d. flows
4. Burning fossil .... results in climate change.
   a. water b. fuels c. olives d. rivers

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

shortage - dry - flood - nature

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become (1) .... Farmers cannot grow food and (2) .... is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water (3) ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. change - causes - Climate - levels - to rise - sea.

....

2. is - natural - Erosion - process - a.

....

3. rain - the - Heavy - land - erodes.

....



Lesson 2 ▸ Language



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

ecofriendly	صديق للبيئة	electric car	سيارة كهربائية

• Extra vocabulary

newspaper	جريدة	rules	قواعد - قوانين
habitat	موطن	polar bear	الدب القطبي
ice cap	غطاء جليدي	ocean	محيط

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
save	ينقذ / يوفر / يدخر	saved	buy	يشترى	bought
rain	تمطر	rained	go	يذهب	went
care	يهتم	cared			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

save money	يدخر / يوفر النقود	save the planet	ينقذ الكوكب
care about	يهتم بـ	for example	على سبيل المثال

II Reading



 **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

What will an electric car do ? ماذا ستفعل السيارة الكهربائية؟



Tarek wants to make his house more ecofriendly. If Tarek uses electricity from solar energy, for example, he will save money.

What will he do with all that extra money ? Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.

طارق يريد أن يجعل منزله صديق للبيئة أكثر. إذا كان طارق يستخدم الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية على سبيل المثال، فإنه سيوفر المال. ماذا سيفعل بهذه الأموال الإضافية؟ طارق سيشترى سيارة كهربائية إذا وفر ما يكفى من المال، ولو اشترى سيارة كهربائية، طارق سيساعد البيئة.



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.


Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?

مرحبًا، منى. كيف حالك انتِ وعائلتك؟


We're fine thanks, but there's a water shortage here.

نحن بخير شكرًا، لكن يوجد نقص في المياه هنا.


Oh, dear. What will you do?

أوه يا عزيزتي. ماذا ستفعلي؟


Well, we'll have to find ways to save water. Dad will stop washing his car.

حسنًا، علينا إيجاد طرق لتوفير المياه. أبي سيتوقف عن غسل سيارته.


That's a good idea. What about your mom?

هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا عن والدتك؟


Mom will reuse water from the kitchen for the garden.

ستعيد أمي استخدام الماء من المطبخ من أجل الحديقة.


That will help the plants. Will you have fewer showers?

هذا سيساعد النباتات. هل ستقومى بتقليل مرات الاستحمام؟


No, I won't. But I'll have shorter showers. That will save a lot of water.

لا، لن أفعل. لكن سآخذ دش قصير. هذا سيوفر الكثير من الماء.



III Language

1 The Future with "will":

١. المستقبل باستخدام [will]:

Usage

We use the simple future tense for actions that will happen in the future.

نستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للأحداث التى سوف تحدث في المستقبل.



Subject فاعل + **will** سوف + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

▶ It will rain tomorrow.

• Help your child learn how to use "will".

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يستخدم "will".

2 Negative statements
الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject فاعل + **will not = won't** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

- I won't go to the beach next Friday.

3 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes / No question :

Will + **subject** فاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + ...?

- Will Malak visit the desert ?
  - Yes, she will. - No, she won't.

B Wh-question :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + **will** + **subject** فاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + ...?

- What will you do ?

Key words الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

tomorrow / this weekend / next (month, year, ...) / in the future
غداً / هذه العطلة / (الشهر، السنة ... القادمة) / في المستقبل



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... you recycle these plastic bottles later ?
   a. Are b. Were c. Will d. Have
2. The drought will .... a water shortage.
   a. caused b. causes c. cause d. causing
3. Hany .... save some money for his next journey.
   a. will b. do c. have d. does
4. Will you .... shopping this afternoon ?
   a. going b. go c. to go d. goes
5. She .... visit her friend tomorrow.
   a. haven't b. don't c. won't d. hasn't

2 The first conditional (If) :

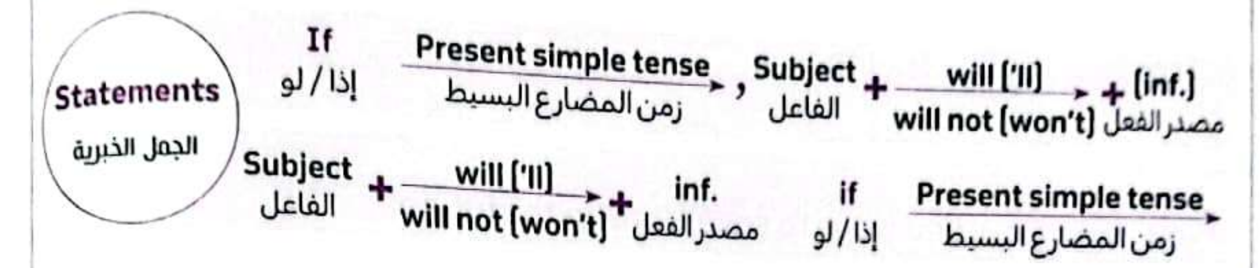
٢. الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about something that is possible in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لنتحدث عن شيء يمكن حدوثه في المستقبل.

Formation التكوين



⭐ لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود (If) في البداية.

ex. - If we use electric vehicles, our cities will be cleaner.
- Tarek will save money if he makes his own electricity.



Pop Quiz on Language تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية.

▶ **Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of word(s) in brackets.**

1. People will be happier if new cities .... (creates) more green spaces.
2. If Sara .... (studying) hard, she will pass the exam.
3. Omar will .... (missing) the bus if he gets up late.
4. If it .... (not rain) soon, we will have a water shortage.
5. If there is a drought, plants .... (die).
6. If we burn fossil fuels, the air .... (not be) clean.
7. If there are more trees in our cities, the streets .... (be) prettier.
8. The air will be cleaner if we .... (planting) more trees.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

prettier - shade - look - plant

We can help the environment by planting more trees. If we (1) .... more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. The streets will have (2) .... and the buildings will be cooler. If there are more trees in our cities, the street will look (3) ...., too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... find ways to save water in the future.
   a. will b. be c. had d. do
2. If we .... electric vehicles, our cities will be cleaner.
   a. used b. uses c. using d. use
3. Lara .... use plastic bags if she cares about the environment.
   a. don't b. won't c. isn't d. didn't
4. If I save enough money, I .... a new car.
   a. buy b. bought c. will buy d. buying
5. They will .... to the party if they're free.
   a. going b. go c. went d. goes

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. shortage - cause - The drought - will - a water.

....

2. we - a science - Will - museum - to - go?

....

3. We'll - find - water - to - save - ways.

....

Lessons 3&4

- Nations working together
- Writing



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

conference	مؤتمر	party	حزب / مجموعة
agreement	اتفاقية / إتفاق	pact	معاهدة دولية
treaty	معاهدة	leader	قائد

Extra vocabulary

effort	مجهود	global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى (ارتفاع درجة حرارة الكرة الأرضية)
teenager	مراهق	document	وثيقة - مستند
emission	إصدار - انبعاث	draft	مسودة
government	حكومة	deforestation	إزالة الغابات
alternative	بديل	complicated	معقد
reporter	مراسل صحفى	foundation	مؤسسة
Amazon Rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	international	عالمى / دولى
nation	دولة - شعب	emergency	طوارئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
affect	يؤثر	affected	become	يصبح	became
slow	يبطئ	slowed	make	يجعل	made
sign	يوقع / يمضى	signed	build	يبنى	built
reduce	يقلل	reduced	find	يجد	found
decide	يقرر	decided			
continue	يستمر	continued			

Did you know ?

The foundation Youth Love Egypt (YLE) has planted thousands of trees along the Nile and canals.

- مؤسسة شباب فى حب مصر قامت بزراعة آلاف من الأشجار بطول نهر النيل والترع (القنوات).

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on our planet	على كوكبنا	by working together	عن طريق العمل سويًا
work on this problem	يعمل على حل تلك المشكلة	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

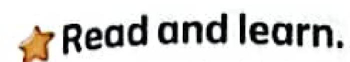
Word	Definition
a conference	a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic اجتماع رسمى حيث يجتمع الناس للحديث عن موضوع
a pact	a formal agreement between two people or groups of people اتفاق رسمى بين شخصين أو مجموعات من الأشخاص
a treaty	a formal written agreement between two or more countries اتفاق رسمى مكتوب بين دولتين أو أكثر
a party	a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs مجموعة من الأشخاص الذين لديهم نفس الأهداف والمعتقدات
the lead-in	one or two sentences that summarize the report جملة أو جملتين تلخص المقال
the headline	the title of the report عنوان المقال
the caption	a description of a picture وصف لصورة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My brother is thirteen. He is a ....
   a. toddler b. baby c. teenager d. child
2. A formal written agreement between two or more countries is a/an ....
   a. conference b. emission c. party d. treaty
3. The .... is a short description of a picture.
   a. caption b. draft c. headline d. lead-in



Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

II Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Global Climate News

— The name of the newspaper

Nations Work Together to Slow Climate Change

— The headline

by Dareen Shabrawi

— The reporter's name

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem.

— The lead-in

— The body of the report

If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference [called COP26] in Glasgow, Scotland. They talked about what they can do to slow climate change, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.

A picture



Leaders from all over the world met in Glasgow, Scotland.

A caption

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

أخبار المناخ العالمية (تعمل الأمم معًا لإبطاء تغير المناخ) بقلم دارين شبراوى
يؤثر تغير المناخ على كل شخص يعيش على كوكبنا، لذلك نحتاج إلى محاولة إبطائه من خلال العمل معًا. تصنع الدول الآن خططًا لحل هذه المشكلة. إذا ساعدنا جميعًا، يمكننا إبطاء تغير المناخ. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والزجاج فى المنزل، ولكن ماذا يمكن للدول أن تفعل ؟ فى الأسبوع الماضى، التقى قادة من كل دول العالم فى مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة المعنى بتغير المناخ المسمى (COP26) فى جلاسكو، اسكتلندا. تحدثوا عن ما يستطيعوا فعله لإبطاء تغير المناخ، لكن هذه لم تكن المرة الأولى التى التقوا فيها. فى الواقع، كان هذا هو اجتماعهم السادس والعشرين. فى الثانى عشر من كانون الأول (ديسمبر ١٩٩٥)، عقد قادة العالم اجتماعًا هامًا للغاية. وقع ١٩٦ طرفًا على اتفاقية باريس. اتفق الأطراف على خفض الاحتباس الحرارى إلى أقل من درجتين مئويتين. للقيام بذلك، وافقت الدول على البدء فى الحد من غازات الاحتباس الحرارى على الفور. كانت هذه هى المرة الأولى التى تبذل فيها دول كثيرة جهودًا جادة لإبطاء ظاهرة الاحتباس الحرارى.

Another important meeting was COP25 in Madrid, Spain in 2019. Greta Thunberg, a teenager from Sweden, asked leaders to do more to slow climate change. After that, Thunberg became **famous** all over the world. This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document : the Glasgow Climate Pact. In this new pact, countries agreed to do **several** things. First, they decided to continue with the Paris Agreement. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.



The Amazon Rainforest in Brazil

Another important topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040, so they will make more electric vehicles.

We must all slow climate change. Treaties like the Paris Agreement are one way for nations to work together to do this.

كان الاجتماع الآخر الهام هو [COP25] فى مدريد، إسبانيا فى عام ٢٠١٩، طلبت جريتا تونبرج، وهى مراهقة من السويد، من القادة بذل المزيد من الجهد لإبطاء تغير المناخ. بعد ذلك، أصبحت تونبرج مشهورة فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

وقع القادة هذا العام فى اجتماع [COP26] على وثيقة جديدة وهى ميثاق غلاسكو للمناخ، فى هذه المعاهدة الجديدة وافقت الدول على القيام بالعديد من الأشياء. أولًا، قرروا الاستمرار فى اتفاقية باريس. كما قرروا التوقف عن استخدام الفحم، وهو وقود حفرى. يتسبب حرق الفحم فى ٤٠٪ من انبعاثات ثانى أكسيد الكربون كل عام، لذلك يجب على الناس التوقف عن استخدامه.

موضوع آخر مهم فى الاجتماع كان النقل. وافقت شركات السيارات على التوقف عن تصنيع السيارات التى تستخدم الوقود الأحفورى بحلول عام ٢٠٤٠ لذلك سيتم تصنيع المزيد من السيارات الكهربائية. يجب علينا جميعًا إبطاء تغير المناخ. معاهدات مثل اتفاقية باريس هى إحدى الطرق التى تعمل بها الدول معًا للقيام بذلك.

Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**famous**" in the text means ....

a. worried b. nervous c. popular d. scared

Practice 2. The underlined word "**several**" means .... things.

a. little b. many c. different d. similar

III Language

A conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences.

أداة الربط هى كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل ببعض.

1 To connect two similar ideas :

• نستخدم [and] لربط فكرتين متشابهين :

and
و

I eat vegetables **and** I exercise.

---

2 To connect two different or contrasting ideas :

• نستخدم [but] لربط فكرتين مختلفين أو متناقضتين :

but
لكن

I want to play football **, but** I hurt my leg.

---

3 To express choices :

• نستخدم [or] للتعبير عن التحذير أو النصيحة :

or
أو

You must do your homework **or** the teacher will punish you.

• نستخدم [or] أيضًا للتعبير عن الاختيارات :

Do you want peaches **or** mangoes ?

---

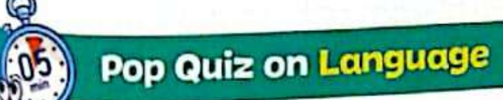
4 To connect cause / reason and results :

• نستخدم [so] لربط السبب والنتائج :

[The second is a result to the first sentence] الجملة الثانية تكون نتيجة الجملة الأولى

so
لذلك

They use solar energy **, so** the air is clean.



▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We must stop deforestation .... we won't save the planet.

a. or b. and c. but d. so

2. I like reading stories .... newspapers.

a. to b. so c. and d. but

3. They went to the mall, ... they didn't buy anything.

a. but b. or c. and d. so

4. It was sunny last Sunday, ... we went to the beach.

a. for b. but c. to d. so

5. Would you like pizza .... pasta for lunch ?

a. so b. or c. to d. but

IV Writing skill

Newspaper report تقرير صحفى

When we write a newspaper report, we use facts and not opinions.

عندما نكتب تقريرًا فى إحدى الصحف، فإننا نستخدم الحقائق وليس الآراء



Fact حقيقة	Opinion رأى
When we burn fossil fuels, we make global warming worse. عندما نحرق الوقود الحفرى، فإننا نجعل الاحتباس الحرارى أسوأ.	It isn't very important to recycle. ليس من المهم جدًا إعادة التدوير.

We can use these useful phrases when you write a newspaper report:

يمكننا استخدام هذه العبارات المفيدة عند كتابة تقرير صحيفة إخبارية :

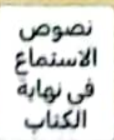
- In fact, ...
- For example, ...

ex.

- In fact, it was their 26th meeting. فى الواقع، كان هذا هو اجتماعهم السادس والعشرون.
- For example, the parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius.

على سبيل المثال، اتفقت الأطراف على خفض الاحتباس الحرارى إلى أقل من درجتين مئوية.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We need to try to .... climate change.
   a. fast b. slow c. make d. do
2. 196 parties signed the .... Agreement.
   a. Cairo b. Rome c. Paris d. New York
3. The parties agreed to .... global warming.
   a. reduce b. produce c. have d. grow
4. Countries agreed to start reducing .... gases immediately.
   a. trees b. roof c. garden d. greenhouse

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The leaders had a conference, ... they didn't sign a treaty.
   a. as b. but c. or d. so
2. My brother likes English .... math.
   a. but b. and c. so d. to
3. Do they use solar energy .... they use fossil fuels ?
   a. so b. but c. because d. or
4. It was a long journey, ... I'm really tired.
   a. but b. so c. and d. or
5. Climate change is very dangerous, ... we need to try to slow it.
   a. so b. as c. or d. but

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. At COP26, leaders decided to stop using coal, and fossil fuels. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop it. Another topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric vehicles

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is "..................".

a. Transportation
b. Climate Change
c. Sports
d. Learning

2. "....................." is the way that people move from one place to another.

a. Climate
b. Meeting
c. Company
d. Transportation

3. Leaders decided to stop using coal and ....

a. ice
b. fossil fuels
c. water
d. solar energy

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions?

....

5. What will car companies make to help the environment?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. all - must - change - We - slow - climate.

....

2. plastic - and seas - A lot of - is - our rivers - in

....

3. important - recycle - It's - to - plastic.

....

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Climate change

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

What causes climate change?

How do people work together to stop climate change?

....

....

....

Lessons **5 & 6**

- The food we eat
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

lentils	عدس	main course	طبق رئيسى
wheat	قمح	chickpeas	حمص
koshari	كشرى	burger	برجر
appetizer	مقبلات	supermarket	متجر كبير

Extra vocabulary

drinks	مشروبات	pasta	مكرونة
hummus	طحينة الحمص	ingredients	مكونات
plant - based meal	وجبة نباتية	ketchup	كاتشب
responsibly	بمسؤولية	menu	قائمة طعام
dessert	وجبة الحلوى (بعد الأكل)	shopping list	قائمة مشتريات

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make for	يصنع لـ	a long way from	طريق طويل بعيد عن
better for	أفضل لـ	from the local market	من السوق المحلى

⭐ Read and identify this definition. تعريفات هامة

Word	Definition
appetizer	a small dish that you eat at the beginning of a meal المقبلات هى طبق صغير تأكله فى بداية الوجبة

⭐ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم

Foods from plants	Food from animals
rice	cheese
chickpeas	beef burger
wheat	meat
lentils	

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Nagwa : I'm hungry. Can we have a burger this evening, please, Mom?
أنا جائعة. هل يمكننا تناول برجر هذا المساء، من فضلك يا أمي؟

Mom : No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's healthier than a burger, and also better for the environment.
لا، نجوى. أنا أعد بعض الكشرى. إنه صحى أكثر من البرجر، كما أنه أفضل للبيئة.

Nagwa : Why is it better for the environment? لماذا هو أفضل للبيئة

Mom : Well, some of the food that you can buy comes from different countries. The bread in a burger is made from wheat. Egypt gets most of its wheat from Russia, and that is a long way from Egypt! And a lot of the meat in a burger comes from South America. That is a very long way!
حسناً، بعض الأطعمة التى يمكنك شراؤها تأتى من بلدان مختلفة. الخبز فى البرجر مصنوع من القمح. مصر تحصل على معظم قمحها من روسيا وهذا بعيد جدًا عن مصر! ومعظم اللحم فى البرجر يأتى من جنوب أمريكا. هذا طريق طويل جدًا!

Nagwa : How does it get here? كيف تصل إلى هنا؟

Mom : Usually by ship or by plane. عادة عن طريق السفن أو بالطائرة.

Nagwa : Ah yes, and that is bad for the environment. أه نعم وهذا مضر بالبيئة.

Mom : That's right. But koshari is different. Do you remember what is in koshari?
هذا صحيح. لكن الكشرى مختلف. هل تتذكرين ما فى الكشرى؟

Nagwa : Yes! It's made with rice, lentils, chickpeas, pasta and, er... tomatoes and onions.
نعم! إنه مصنوع من الأرز والعدس والحمص والمكرونة و... الطماطم والبصل.

Mom : That's right. I can buy most of these things from the local market. And the market gets all the vegetables and plant-based food from local farmers. So everything comes from Egypt.
هذا صحيح. يمكننى شراء معظم هذه الأشياء من السوق المحلى . ويحصل السوق على جميع الخضراوات والأغذية النباتية من المزارعين المحليين. لذلك كل شيء يأتى من مصر.

Nagwa : I understand now. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening! And I'll remember that it is healthier and better for the environment than a burger.
فهمت الآن. أنا سعيدة لأننا سنتناول الكشرى هذا المساء! وسأتذكر أنه صحى أكثر وأفضل للبيئة من البرجر.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1. Nada has some money and a shopping ....
   a. mall   b. list   c. bag   d. book
2. Her mom wants to make ....
   a. rice   b. fish   c. koshari   d. meat
3. Nada will buy some burgers and .... for her sister, Hana.
   a. fruit   b. mango   c. onions   d. bread
4. For ...., Nada will buy some ice cream and fruits.
   a. dessert   b. lunch   c. snack   d. breakfast

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

chickpeas - dessert - garden - supermarket

My mom always goes shopping on Fridays. She buys our food at a big (1)............................ . A lot of food is from Egypt. Yesterday was Friday, so mom went shopping and bought the ingredients for koshari. She bought rice, onions, and (2) .... .I'm happy to eat koshari. It's my best Egyptian dish. Mom also bought ice cream for (3)............................ .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. would - a beef - Nagwa – like – burger.

....

2. rice – is - and lentils - made with - Koshari.

....

3. buy – I - things - most - the local - from - shops.

....

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Egyptian food

Guiding elements :

- Which foods come from Egypt ?
- Which foods come from animals / plants ?
- Which foods do you often eat ?
- What's your favorite food ?

....

....



Skills

UNIT 12

1 Reading comprehension

Make logical inferences from the text





تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استنتاج بعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة غير موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيدًا لأن الإجابة قد تكون غير موجودة بشكل مباشر فى النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Flood is one of the natural disasters. It causes great damage to everything. Too much rain in one area can cause a flood. Flood happens when too much rain falls on hills and mountains. When there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can be a landslide. This is when the soil and rocks move and fall away.

شرح الحل تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا لكى تتمكن من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلًا :
- الفيضان كارثة طبيعية فنستنتج من ذلك أنه شئ ضار للبيئة ويدمر كل شئ.
- عدم وجود الأشجار يؤدى الى انهيار الأراضى لذلك وجودها يمنع ذلك.

1. Do you think flood is bad for the environment ? Why ?
   - Yes, because it causes great damage.
2. Planting trees helps to stop a landslide. Explain.
   - When there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can be a landslide.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Climate change affects everyone living on the planet. We need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic and glass at home. We should stop burning coal and fossil fuels.

1. Are nations interested in solving the problem of climate change ? Why?

   ....

2. Can we solve climate change problem ? How ?

   ....



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [تآكل التربة] و [مساعدة بيئتنا] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Erosion	▶ Write the meaning : ضفة نهر .... صخور .... أمطار .... أمواج .... حريق .... يجرف [يتآكل]	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. Erosion happens when .... and soil are moved from one place to another. 2. The .... and currents in the sea erode beaches. 3. Rivers can erode .... 4. Heavy .... or winds can also cause the land to erode.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Erosion" ....
Helping our environment	شارع .... ظل .... زراعة .... حرارة معتدلة .... أكثر نظافة .... حضرى	1. We can help the environment by .... more trees. 2. If we plant more trees, the air will be .... 3. The streets will have .... and the buildings will be cooler. 4. If residents live in a beautiful .... environment, they will feel happier	▶ Write an email using the sentences: "Helping our environment" ....



3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Erosion	rock - move	Erosion happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by wind, water or flows.
	waves - erode	The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches.
	river - riverbanks	Rivers can erode riverbanks.
	rains - cause	Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode.
	burning - results in	Burning fossil fuels results in climate change.
Climate change	slow down	If we all help, we can slow down climate change.
	recycle -plastic	We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home.
	stop - coal	We should stop burning coal.
	burn - emissions	When we burn coal, it creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions.
	climate change - complicated	We must all slow climate change or we will have a complicated future.
Natural disasters	rain - flood	Too much rain in one area can cause a flood.
	hills - landslide	When too much rain falls on hills and there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can be a landslide.
	drought - rain	Drought happens where there's not enough rain for a long time.
Helping our environment	help - planting	We can help the environment by planting more trees.
	cleaner	If we plant more trees, the air will be cleaner.
	street - shade	The streets will have shade and the buildings will be cooler.
	beautiful - environment	If residents live in a beautiful environment, they will feel happier.



4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Flood and landslide

Flood is one of the natural disasters.[1] It causes great damage to everything.[2] Too much rain in one area can cause a flood.[3] Flood happens when too much rain falls on hills and mountains.[4] When there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can also be a landslide.[5] This is when the soil and rocks move and fall away.[6]

2 Drought

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time.[7] When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry.[8] Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger.[9] When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.[10] Water is very important in our world.[11] We need water to survive.[12]

3 Climate change

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet.[13] We need to try to slow it by working together.[14] Nations are now making plans to work on this problem.[15] If we all help, we can slow climate change.[16] We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home.[17] We should stop burning coal and fossil fuels.[18]

4 How to help the environment

We can help the environment by planting more trees.[19] If we plant more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner.[20] The streets will have shade and the buildings will be cooler.[21] If there are more trees in our cities, the streets will look prettier, too.[22] That is important.[23] If residents live in a beautiful urban environment, they will feel happier.[24]

Review on Unit 12

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية عشر فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary


erosion


drought


water shortage


landslide


flood


glacier


lentils


chickpeas


wheat



burger


tsunami

Language

1. The future with " will"

- It will rain tomorrow.
- I won't go to the beach next Friday.

3. Conjunctions

I eat vegetables and I exercise.

I want to play football, but I hurt my leg.

2. First conditional "If"

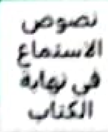
If (إذا / لو) + Present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل)

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) if (إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

☆ لاحظ وضع [,] comma قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود [If] فى البداية.

ex. - If we use electric vehicles, our cities will be cleaner.
- Tarek will save money if he makes his own electricity.

Test 11 on Unit 12



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My birthday was last ....
   a. Saturday b. Sunday c. Friday d. Wednesday
2. I went to the .... with my mom and sister.
   a. funfair b. cinema c. park d. museum
3. My .... wanted to go to the restaurant.
   a. father b. mother c. brother d. sister
4. On Sunday, we went to the .... ,but it was closed .
   a. funfair b. planetarium c. cinema d. museum

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

planet - help - problem - save

Maha : Hi, Soha. How are you ?
Soha : I'm fine thanks, but I'm worried about something.
Maha : What's the (1).............. ?
Soha : There's a water shortage here.
Maha : What will you do ?
Soha : I'll find ways to (2).............. water.
Maha : That's a good idea. Will you ask your parents for (3).............. ?
Soha : Yes, I will.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows – floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers – also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and results in more erosion.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "........................".
   a. Drought b. Flood c. Erosion d. Traffic
2. The .... in the sea can erode the beach.
   a. animals b. currents c. winds d. humans
3. Heavy .... or winds can also cause the land to erode.
   a. food b. rains c. animals d. beaches

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What are the types of flows ?

....

5. What does climate change lead to ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ☐
2. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Anissa's dad works at the ....
   a. market b. library c. school d. park
2. Waleed showed his father Amir's picture of the ....
   a. roof b. river c. street d. seagull

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My brother likes football, ... he doesn't like tennis.
   a. and b. or c. but d. for
2. If the polar ice ...., sea levels will rise.
   a. melted b. melts c. melt d. to melt
3. They .... visit the museum tomorrow.
   a. do b. are c. will d. have
4. He .... plastic bags if he cares about the environment.
   a. won't use b. uses c. are using d. will use
5. He worked for a long time, ... he was very tired.
   a. but b. or c. and d. so

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. burn - won't - fuels - fossil - We.

....

2. the science - Will - museum - they - go - to ?

....

3. die - eat - Animals - when - they - plastic.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Egyptian dishes

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :
• koshari • lentils • wheat • chickpeas • hawawshi

....

....

Test 12 on Unit 12

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Deforestation is a .... emergency.
   a. gold b. local c. national d. global
2. The world's leaders must act quickly to save the world's ....
   a. forests b. seas c. oceans d. deserts
3. The world's leaders met today at a conference in ....
   a. Marsa Matrouh b. Paris c. Cairo d. Tanta
4. The world's leaders discussed the problem of ....
   a. transportation b. deforestation c. traffic d. climate change

[Cairo - Rod El-Farag 2023]

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

environment - food - slowly - water shortage

During a drought there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water. There is a (1) .... This affects the (2) .... Farmers can't grow (3) .... or feed their animals.

[Damietta - Farskour 2023]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

We can help the environment by planting more trees. If we plant more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. The streets will have shade and the buildings will be cooler. If there are more trees in our cities, the streets will look prettier, too. That is important. If residents live in a **beautiful** urban environment, they will feel happier.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is mainly about " .... ".
   a. Protecting environment b. Residents
   c. Streets d. Trees
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**beautiful**" is ....
   a. lovely b. ugly c. good d. cute
3. Trees give us .... in streets.
   a. heat b. rain c. shade d. clouds

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What will happen to the streets if we plant more trees?
   ....
5. When will the residents feel happy?
   ....

[Sharkia - 10th of Ramadan 2023]

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took the laundry up to the school. ☐
2. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his tablet. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandma will .... some shopping bags for Amir.
   a. see b. send c. sew d. save
2. The fishermen can help taking the plastic out of the ....
   a. sky b. land c. ground d. river

[El Beheira - Abou Hommos 2023]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If we .... electric vehicles, our cities will be cleaner. [Ismailia 2023]
   a. use b. using c. uses d. used
2. If the climate gets hotter, there .... be more droughts. [Beni Suief - Wasta 2023]
   a. should b. can c. will d. must
3. We will .... to save the planet. [Gharbia - Basioun 2023]
   a. helped b. helping c. helps d. help
4. .... you recycle these newspapers later? - Yes, I will. [Assiut - Manflout 2023]
   a. Will b. Are c. Do d. Have
5. I want to be fit, ... I do a lot of exercise. [Giza - Al Agouza 2023]
   a. and b. but c. or d. so

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. help - protect - the - environment - Forests - to. [Minia - Minia 2023]

....

2. about - talking - They - climate change - are. [Qalyobia - Shobra El-Khima 2023]

....

3. favorite - My - lunch - is - for - dish - koshari. [Damietta - Farskour 2023]

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40)words using the following guiding elements.

Erosion and drought

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- process
- erode
- dry
- rain

[Giza - Al Agouza 2023]

....

....

....

Review 4 General Revision on Units 10,11&12

I Vocabulary

Unit 10

electronic devices أجهزة إلكترونية	means of communication وسائل التواصل	social media platform منصة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
instant message رسالة فورية	smoke signals إشارات الدخان	smartphone هاتف ذكي
vlog مدونة الفيديوهات	account حساب	email رسالة بريد إلكتروني
access مدخل / الوصول إلى	opinions آراء	private خاص
adventure مغامرة	user مستخدم	blog مدونة إلكترونية
cyberfriends أصدقاء عبر الانترنت	expert خبير	personal شخصي

Unit 11

green spaces مساحات خضراء	transportation وسائل النقل	science museum المتحف العلمي
traffic حركة مرور	road طريق	urban حضري
worse أسوأ	subway مترو الأنفاق	residents سكان
seat belt حزام أمان	journey رحلة	destination وجهة الوصول
translation ترجمة	ferry عبارة نهرية	university جامعة
problem مشكلة	ecological بيئي	neighborhood حي

Unit 12

erosion تآكل / تعرية	geology جيولوجيا	conference مؤتمر
drought جفاف	heavy agriculture الزراعة الكثيفة	water shortage نقص المياه
lake بحيرة	sea level مستوى البحر	party حزب
landslide انهيار أرضي	agreement اتفاقية	riverbank ضفة النهر
flood فيضان	climate change تغير المناخ	natural طبيعي
glacier نهر جليدي	limestone حجر جيري	lentils عدس

II Language

• Unit 10 — (1) Conjunctions : "and / but / or"

"and" لربط أفكار متوافقة — - I like apples and bananas

"but" لتوضيح التناقض — - There's a newspaper, but there isn't a magazine.

"or" عند إظهار الاختيارات — - I couldn't write short stories or articles.

(2) should / shouldn't :

- You should eat some fruit.
- You shouldn't work too long without a break.

• Unit 11 —

Comparative adj.	Superlative adj.
short adj. + er → than	**the + short adj. + est**
- Cairo is busier than Damietta.	- That toy is the cheapest one in the shop.
more + long adj. + than	**the most + long adj.**
- Airplanes are more expensive than cars.	- This T-shirt is the most expensive one in the shop.

• Unit 12 — (1) The Future with "will"

Subj. → will / won't + inf. + ...

- It will rain tomorrow.

(2) "If" First conditional :

If (إذا / لو) + **present simple tense** (زمن المضارع البسيط) → , **subject** (الفاعل) + **will ('ll) / will not (won't)** → + **(inf.)** (مصدر الفعل)

Subject (الفاعل) + **will ('ll) / will not (won't)** → + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) **if** (إذا / لو) **present simple tense** (زمن المضارع البسيط) →

February Test

اختبار شهر فبراير

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is a very dry environment.
   a. mountainous b. polar c. rainforest d. desert
2. The animals that live in desert have to find clever ways to .... without a lot of water.
   a. change b. live c. rain d. survive
3. You can find this environment on every ....
   a. continent b. street c. building d. forest
4. A desert can be hot or ....
   a. dangerous b. wet c. cold d. sick

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

coastal - swamps - Delta - sand

Ramy : Hello, Gamal.
Gamal : Hello, Ramy. What kind of environment do you live in?
Ramy : I live in Alexandria. It's a (1) .... environment.
Gamal : What are the good things about it?
Ramy : There are beaches with (2) .... I go swimming there.
Gamal : Oh! fantastic! Can you give me examples of the coastal environment?
Ramy : The Nile (3) .... is an example, and so is the Red Sea
Gamal : Thank you, Ramy.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can <u>grow</u> more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too.

Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metal, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ".................... ".
   a. Natural resources b. Farmers
   c. Earth d. Animals
2. The underlined word "**grow**" means ....
   a. put b. stick c. plant d. hide
3. There are .... types of natural resources mentioned in the text.
   a. three b. two c. five d. eight

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What do we mean by renewable resources?
   ....

5. Give examples of non-renewable resources.

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir helped his Grandma cook dinner.
2. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... sent emails to all her cousins.
   a. Grandma b. Anissa c. Mariam d. Dalia
2. Waleed went to his dad's .... store.
   a. toy b. grocery c. clothes d. shoe

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... to beaches in summer.
   a. go often b. go usually c. often go d. go never
2. Look! He .... the mountain easily.
   a. climb b. is climbing c. climbing d. are climbing
3. .... she cooking lunch?
   a. Does b. Are c. Is d. Did
4. What are they .... to stop the air pollution?
   a. doing b. do c. does d. did
5. He .... watching films now.
   a. am not b. isn't c. doesn't d. don't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are – resources - Fossil fuels – non-renewable.

....

2. has – layers – Fatta – rice – bread – and – of.

....

3. made – Ramadan – I – a special – lantern – for.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Grandma's cook book

Guiding elements :

• meals • share • recipes • describe

....
....
....
....
....

Monthly Assessments | March Test

اختبار شهر مارس

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's ....
   a. culture b. history c. heritage d. art
2. The Nile used to .... every year.
   a. dry b. flood c. farm d. pollute
3. Ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in ....
   a. information b. invitation c. population d. civilization
4. There were .... seasons of farming in ancient Egypt.
   a. three b. four c. five d. six

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

online – comments – social media – goes

Noura : How old should you have to be to create a social media account?
Soha : Thirteen years old.
Noura : Why does your brother want to have a (1) .... account?
Soha : Because his friend, Wael, has one.
Noura : What does Wael use his social media account for?
Soha : He posts videos and he makes new friends (2) ....
Noura : How can you make your account safer?
Soha : By making the page private and turning off the (3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in Saqqara. The **ancient** Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. Alexandria used to be the capital of Egypt. There is an ancient Roman theatre there and the famous Qaitbay Citadel. Its ancient library was famous all over the world. You can visit the Temple of Karnak in Luxor. You can also visit the Valley of the Kings from the city. This is where the ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens. Many tourists visit this city from a cruise on the Nile River.

The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the Pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about "................".
   a. New cities b. Traveling around the world
   c. Egypt's monuments d. Social media
2. The underlined word "**ancient**" means very ....
   a. new b. modern c. old d. bad

3. The ancient Egyptians built the .... Pyramids for King Djoser.

a. Small b. Step c. Low d. High

B. **Answer the following questions:**

4. Why do people think the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx ?

....

5. What places can you visit in Luxor ?

....

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Birds have their babies in a nest. ☐
2. Amir saw plastic bottles floating down the street. ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Amir could see the Nile from the ....

a. window b. roof c. kitchen d. living room

2. Amir sent the pictures of the .... to some of his friends from school.

a. fish b. turtle c. seagull d. lion

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... my favorite meal last night.

a. to cook b. cooking c. cook d. cooked

2. You .... sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

a. shouldn't b. should c. should to d. shouldn't to

3. My sister was .... in the library when the bell rang.

a. is read b. to read c. reading d. read

4. We should .... a lot of water every day.

a. to drink b. drinks c. drink d. drinking

5. We .... talk loudly in the library.

a. shouldn't b. should c. must d. can

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can – see – Where – you – engravings ?

....

2. is – digital – of – An email – form – a – a letter.

....

3. kind – a special – A blog – website – of – is.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

"Using social media"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• cyberfriends • nasty comments • post videos • account

....

....

Non-Fiction Reader | Shipwrecks

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Vocabulary Part 1

dive	يغطس	tsunamis	موجات المد
bay	خليج	shipwreck	حطام السفينة
sail	شراع	rowing boat	قارب تجديف
technology	تكنولوجيا	sink	يغرق
sailor	بحار	earthquake	زلزال
bricks	قوالب طوب	port	ميناء
historian	مؤرخ	coast	ساحل
archaeologist	عالم آثار	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية

Vocabulary Part 2

currents	تيارات	oars	مجاديف
holes	فتحات/ ثقوب	reefs	شعاب مرجانية
explore	يستكشف	artificial	اصطناعى
surface	سطح	storm	عاصفة
allow	يسمح	sight	مشهد / مَعلَم

Read and identify these definitions. تعريفات هامة.

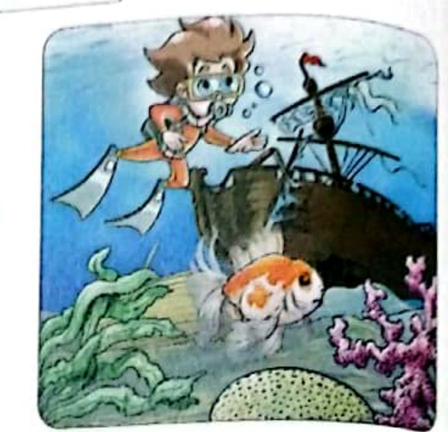
Word	Definitions
sail	a large piece of cloth that makes a ship move in the wind قطعة قماش كبيرة تجعل السفينة تتحرك في مهب الريح
port	a place where big ships can stay in a town or city مكان حيث يمكن للسفن الكبيرة البقاء في بلدة أو مدينة
rowing boat	a boat that moves when people move large sticks called oars through the water قارب يتحرك عندما يحرك الناس عصى كبيرة تسمى المجاديف عبر الماء
sink	to go down under the water ينزل إلى أسفل تحت الماء
tsunami	a big wave that is started by an earthquake under the water موجه كبيرة تبدأ بزلزال تحت الماء
shipwreck	an old ship that is under the water سفينة قديمة تحت الماء



part 1 ▶ What is a shipwreck ?

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

What is a shipwreck ?



In 2021, archaeologists were working at a site under the Mediterranean Sea, near the north coast of Egypt. This site was the ancient city of Thônis-Heracleion. The archaeologists' modern technology helped them to see what was on the bottom of the sea. Under five meters of clay and bricks, they found a wooden ship. It was over 2,200 years old.

Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city.
In the fifth century BCE, it was a very important place for sailors and for people who bought and sold things. It was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria. However, there were lots of natural disasters such as earthquakes and tsunamis at the time. About 1,200 years ago, in the eighth century CE, the city fell into the sea at Abu Qir Bay and disappeared.

In 2001, archaeologists discovered the city. When they dived under the water, they found lots of interesting artifacts at the underwater site, including statues, pottery, and coins.
The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that they found there. Archaeologists often find things which are old and broken, but this ship was almost complete.

Archaeologists think that the ship was waiting in the port next to the temple of Amun. An earthquake in about 140 BCE destroyed the temple. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink. The wooden ship was a very large rowing boat and it also had a large sail. It is about 25 meters long. It was a fast ship and it had a flat bottom, like ships that traveled on the Nile. It was similar to the style of some ships built in ancient Egypt, so archaeologists and historians are very excited by this discovery.

فى عام ٢٠٢١، كان علماء الآثار يعملون فى موقع فى قاع البحر الأبيض المتوسط، بالقرب من الساحل الشمالى لمصر. كان هذا الموقع هو مدينة ثونيس هرقليون القديمة. ساعدت التكنولوجيا الحديثة علماء الآثار على رؤية ما كان فى قاع البحر. تحت خمسة أمتار من الطين والطوب، وجدوا سفينة خشبية. كان عمرها أكثر من ٢٢٠٠ عام. كانت ثونيس هرقليون مدينة قديمة جدًا - فى القرن الخامس قبل الميلاد، كانت مكانًا مهمًا للغاية للبحارة وللناس الذين يشترون ويبيعون الأشياء. كان أكبر ميناء فى مصر قبل الإسكندرية ومع ذلك كان هناك الكثير من الكوارث الطبيعية مثل الزلازل وأمواج تسونامى فى ذلك الوقت. منذ حوالى ١٢٠٠ عام فى القرن الثامن الميلادى، سقطت المدينة فى البحر فى خليج أبو قير واختفت. فى عام ٢٠٠١، اكتشف علماء الآثار المدينة. عندما غاصوا تحت الماء، وجدوا الكثير من القطع الأثرية المثيرة للإهتمام فى الموقع تحت الماء بما فى ذلك التماثيل والفخار والعملات المعدنية.

هذه السفينة هى أكبر شئ وجدوه هناك وأكثرها إثارة. غالبًا ما يجد علماء الآثار أشياء قديمة ومكسورة، لكن هذه السفينة كانت شبه مكتملة. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن السفينة كانت تنتظر فى الميناء المجاور لمعبد آمون. وحدث زلزال حوالى عام ١٤٠ قبل الميلاد دمر المعبد. سقط الطوب من المعبد على القارب مما جعله يغرق. كانت السفينة الخشبية عبارة عن قارب تجديف كبير جدًا وكان لها أيضًا شراع كبير يبلغ طوله حوالى ٢٥ مترًا. كانت سفينة سريعة ولها قاع مسطح مثل السفن التى كانت تسير فى النيل. كانت متشابهة لأسلوب بعض السفن التى انشأت فى مصر القديمة، لذلك فإن علماء الآثار والمؤرخين متحمسون جدًا لهذا الاكتشاف.



part 2 ▸ What is wreck diving ?

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



The shipwreck in Abu Qir Bay is buried under clay and bricks, but you can see many other shipwrecks. The Red Sea has lots of places where divers can go down to **wreck sites**[1] and explore ships under the water.

Lots of ships use the Red Sea, because it lies between Asia and Africa. It also allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. However, there are storms, **reefs**[2] and strong **currents**[3] in the Red Sea, which can make it dangerous. Sometimes, ships hit the reefs and sink.

One of the oldest shipwrecks in the Red Sea is the Carnatic. It sank in 1869 when it hit the Abu Nuhas reef. It has been under water for over 150 years, and divers can explore the ship and see lots of sea animals. Another famous shipwreck is the Dunraven, which sank in 1876. There are large **holes**[4] in the boat so divers can swim inside it.

Because these ships have been under the water for a long time, they have become **artificial**[5] reefs. They are homes for fish, turtles, dolphins, and other sea animals. Corals live on the metal **surface**[6] and there are also lots of different kinds of plants.

You have to be good at diving to visit a shipwreck, and you should go in a group. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the Red Sea and see the amazing sights!

[1] مواقع الحطام
[2] شُعاب مرجانية
[3] تيارات
[4] فتحات
[5] اصطناعى
[6] سطح

حطام السفينة فى خليج أبو قير مدفون تحت الطين والطوب، لكن يمكنك أن ترى العديد من حطام السفن الأخرى. يوجد فى البحر الأحمر الكثير من الأماكن حيث يمكن للغواصين النزول إلى مواقع الحطام واستكشاف السفن تحت الماء. تستخدم الكثير من السفن البحر الأحمر، لأنه يقع بين آسيا و أفريقيا. كما يسمح للسفن بالسفر إلى أوروبا عبر قناة السويس. بالرغم من وجود عواصف وشعاب مرجانية وتيارات قوية فى البحر الأحمر يمكن أن تجعلها خطيرة. فى بعض الأحيان تصطدم السفن بالشعاب المرجانية وتغرق. كارناتيك هى واحدة من أقدم حطام السفن فى البحر الأحمر وغرقت عام ١٨٦٩ عندما اصطدمت بشعاب أبو نحاس. لقد كانت تحت الماء لأكثر من ١٥٠ عامًا ويمكن للغواصين استكشاف السفينة ورؤية الكثير من الحيوانات البحرية. حطام السفينة الشهير الآخر هو دنرافن، التى غرقت فى عام ١٨٧٦. توجد ثقوب كبيرة فى القارب لذلك يتمكن الغواصون من السباحة بداخلها، ولأن هذه السفن كانت تحت الماء لفترة طويلة، فقد أصبحت شعابًا اصطناعية. إنها مواطن للأسماك والسلاحف والدلافين والحيوانات البحرية الأخرى. يعيش المرجان على السطح المعدنى. وهناك أيضًا الكثير من أنواع النباتات المختلفة. يجب أن تكون جيدًا فى الغوص لزيارة حطام سفينة ويجب أن تذهب فى مجموعة. يأتى الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم ليذهبوا للغوص عند الحطام تحت الماء فى البحر الأحمر ويشاهدون المشاهد المذهلة!

• Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises on Non Fiction Reader

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. During the earthquake, bricks fell onto the ship and made it sink. ▢
2. The Mediterranean Sea is near the north coast of Egypt. ▢
3. Thônis-Heracleion was an important city. ▢
4. The wooden ship looks like the ships that sailed along the Nile. ▢
5. Thônis-Heracleion was the smallest port in Egypt. ▢
6. The Red Sea is always safe. ▢
7. There are no ships that use the Red Sea. ▢
8. Ships hit the reefs and sink. ▢
9. Corals live on the wooden surface of the ship. ▢
10. In the past, people came to Thônis-Heracleion to farm the land. ▢

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. When the archaeologists explored the city, they found lots of ....
   a. boxes b. statues c. sails d. rocks
2. In 2001, ... discovered the city when they dived under the water.
   a. pilots b. fishermen c. leaders d. archaeologists
3. Ships bring goods into the ....
   a. office b. desert c. port d. earthquake
4. You can see many .... under the Red Sea.
   a. coins b. shipwrecks c. books d. ports
5. The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez ....
   a. Tunnel b. Canal c. Reef d. Current
6. You have to be good at .... to visit a shipwreck.
   a. diving b. jumping c. writing d. reading

Fiction Reader

Amir takes action

أمير يتخذ إجراء



Story Map

خريطة القصة

The characters الشخصيات


Amir


Grandma


Anissa


Dalia


Waleed


Waleed's dad


Anissa's dad


the seagull


the baby seagulls

The setting المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

- Amir's house منزل أمير
- on the Grandma's roof سطح منزل الجدة
- Waleed's dad grocery store متجر والد وليد
- the market السوق

Time الوقت

- On the summer holiday في إجازة الصيف

Story plot حبكة القصة



Beginning

- Amir checked the washing machine.
- Amir took the laundry up to the roof.
- Amir saw plastic bottles floating down the river.
- Amir saw a large seagull in the nest.



Middle

- There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg.
- Amir was sad for the seagull.
- Amir sent a photo to his friends to help the seagull.
- Amir wanted to take action.



End

- The friends met at Amir's house.
- Grandma volunteered to help.
- Waleed wanted his dad to stop using plastic bags in his grocery store.
- Anissa asked her dad for help and he will ask fishermen to take the plastic out of the river.
- Dalia sent an email to all her cousins.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور



a biodegradable bag
كيس قابل للتحلل



cloth قماش



land يهبط



laundry
غسيل / ملابس مغسوله



nest عش



roof سطح منزل



check
يفحص / يختبر



washing machine
غسالة ملابس



seagull
طائر النورس (المائى)

Read and identify.

Word	Definition
biodegradable bag :	You can put this in the garden and it will feed the plants. - أكياس قابلة للتحلل
cloth :	You can wash this bag because it is made of cloth. - قماش
land :	The plane will land at the airport. - يهبط
laundry :	After you wash these things, put all the laundry out to dry in the sun. - غسيل
nest :	Birds have their babies in a nest. - عُش
roof :	It's on the top of the house. - سطح منزل
seagull :	Seagulls live near the sea and eat fish. - طائر النورس (المائى)
washing machine :	You can wash your clothes in a washing machine. - غسالة ملابس

New Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
check	يفحص / يتفقد	colorful	ملون	suddenly	فجأة
finished	انتهى	together	معًا	change	تغيير / يغير
village	قرية	washing machine	غسالة ملابس	the Nile	نهر النيل
transport	ينقل	beautiful	جميل	plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية
hang up	يعلق / ينشر	below	أسفل	float	يطفو
land	يهبط	truck	شاحنة	really	حقًا / للغاية
neighbor	جار	quickly	بسرعة	tablet	جهاز حاسوب لوحى
nature	طبيعة	large	كبير	sad	حزين
poor	مسكين / ضعيف	top	قمة	trouble	مشكلة
leg	ساق	nod	يُومئ رأسه بالموافقة	horrible	مزعج / مفزع
put	يضع	respect	يحترم	around	حول
harm	يؤذى	evening	المساء	smart	ذكى
understand	يفهم	pick up	يلتقط	sent	أرسل
need	يحتاج	noticed	لاحظ	text	يرسل رسالة نصية
take action	يتخذ إجراء	birds	طيور	internet	الإنترنت
discover	يكتشف	help	يساعد	group	مجموعة
meeting	اجتماع	worried	قلق	end up	ينتهى به الأمر
save	ينقذ	research	يبحث / بحث	riverbank	ضفة النهر
notes	ملاحظات	billions	مليارات	store	متجر
cousins	أبناء العم	volunteer	متطوع / يتطوع	email	بريد إلكترونى
fishermen	الصيادين	message	رسالة	explain	يشرح / يوضح
sew	يخيط	town	مدينة صغيرة	show	يعرض
start	يبدأ	clean up	ينظف	let's	دعنا
shopping bags	أكياس تسوق	ideas	افكار	important	هام
stop	يتوقف	grocery store	متجر بقالة	a couple days	يومان
market	سوق	plan	خطة	smile	يبتسم
take out	يُخرج - يزيل	laundry	غسيل	fold	يطوى
great	رائع / عظيم	basket	سلة	remember	يتذكر
roof	سطح (أعلى المنزل)				

1 The beginning
بداية القصة

Amir is helping his Grandma with the laundry
أمير يساعد جدته فى الغسيل !

"Amir, can you check the washing machine ? I think the wash is finished". "Yes, it's finished, Grandma. I'll take the clothes out for you".

"أمير، هل يمكنك أن تتفقد الغسالة ؟ أعتقد أن الغسيل انتهى".
"نعم، لقد انتهى، يا جدتى. سأخرج الملابس من أجلك".



Grandma's roof سطح منزل الجدة

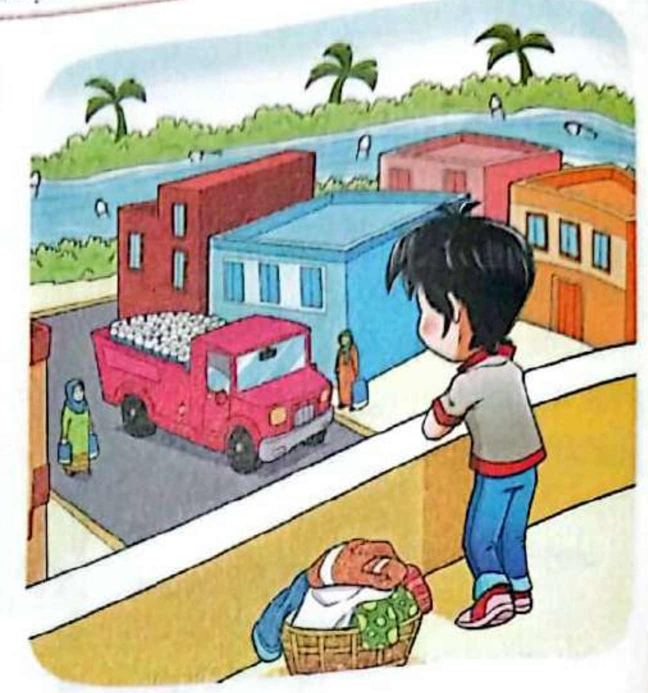


Amir took the laundry up to the roof.

From there, he could see the beautiful Nile and the village below him.

أخذ أمير الغسيل إلى سطح المنزل. ومن هناك استطاع أن يرى النيل الجميل والقرية فى الأسفل.

The plastic bottles الزجاجات البلاستيكية



Amir looked down. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water and women carried their shopping home from the market in plastic bags. He could also see plastic bottles floating down the river.

نظر أمير للأسفل. كانت الشاحنات تنقل زجاجات المياه البلاستيكية والسيدات تحمل أغراض التسوق الخاصة بالمنزل من السوق في أكياس بلاستيكية. استطاع أن يرى أيضًا زجاجات بلاستيكية تطفو على سطح النهر.

Grandma hanging up clothes تنشر الجدة الملابس



"Let's hang up these clothes quickly. It's really hot up here today," said Grandma.

قالت الجدة : "هيا نقوم بنشر الملابس بسرعة. إن الطقس حار للغاية هنا في الأعلى اليوم".

The seagull طائر النورس

A large seagull landed in a nest on top of the neighbor's building.
"Look at the seagull, Grandma! She's so beautiful," said Amir.
Grandma nodded her head.
"Yes, she is," Grandma answered. "All of nature is beautiful. We must respect it."

هبط طائر نورس كبير في عُش فوق مبنى الجار.
قال أمير "انظري يا جدتي إلى طائر النورس! إنها جميلة جدًا".

أومأت الجدة برأسها وأجابت : "نعم، إنها كذلك. الطبيعة كلها جميلة، يجب أن نحترمها."



General Exercises on "The beginning"

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took the laundry to his bedroom. ◯
2. Amir helped his Grandma cook dinner. ◯
3. Amir lives in a village. ◯
4. Amir couldn't see the Nile from the roof. ◯
5. Grandma asked Amir to check the washing machine. ◯
6. Amir helped his Grandma do the laundry. ◯

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir took the .... out of the washing machine.
   a. bird b. laundry c. plastic d. tablet
2. Amir helped his .... hang up the clothes.
   a. grandpa b. dad c. mom d. grandma

2 | The Middle
منتصف القصة

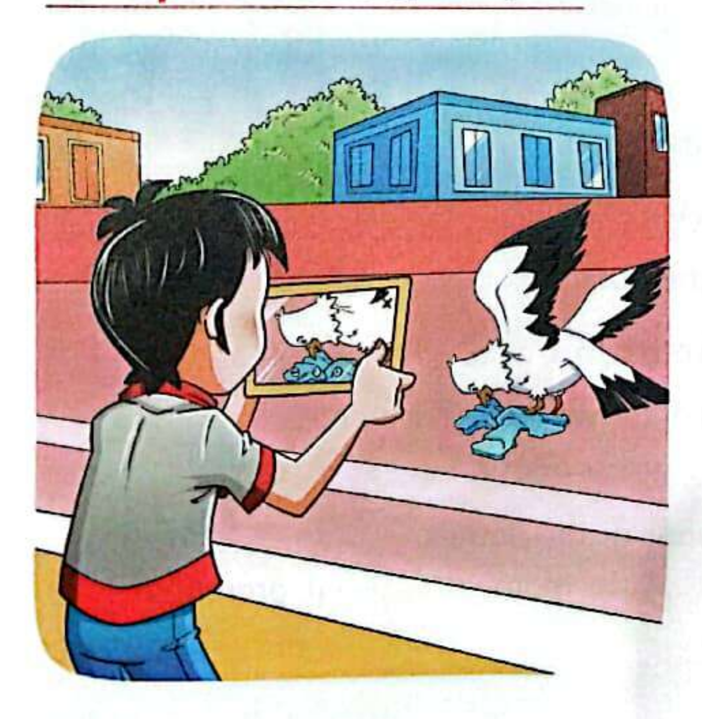
The seagull is in trouble طائر النورس في مشكلة

Amir then noticed something horrible: there was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. "Oh no! She's in trouble," said Amir.

لاحظ أمير بعد ذلك شيئًا مزعجًا : هناك كيس بلاستيكي حول ساق طائر النورس. قال أمير : "أوه لا ! إنها في مشكلة".



The poor bird الطائر المسكين



Amir's tablet was on the table where he sometimes does his homework in the evening. He picked it up and took a picture of the poor bird. Amir felt sad.

كان جهاز الحاسوب اللوحي الخاص بأمير على المنضدة حيث يقوم أحيانًا بعمل واجباته المدرسية في المساء. فأخذه والتقط صورة للطائر المسكين. شعر أمير بالحزن.

Amir identifies the problem يحدد أمير المشكلة

'Grandma saw how Amir was feeling. She put her arm around him. "It'll be OK, Amir."
"No, it won't. We have to do something to help. People are using too much plastic and it's harming the birds."
"You're a smart boy, Amir. How can we help other people understand this ?" his grandma asked him.

رأت الجدة كيف كان أمير يشعر. وضعت يدها حوله وقالت : "ستكون بخير يا أمير." "لا لن يحدث. علينا فعل شيء لنساعد. إن الناس يستخدمون الكثير من البلاستيك وهذا يؤذي الطيور"."أنت ولد ذكي يا أمير" وسألته : "كيف يمكننا أن نساعد الآخرين على فهم هذا ؟"



Amir shows the problem يعرض أمير المشكلة



That night, Amir sent the picture of the seagull to some of his friends from school. They were all very worried about the bird.
"We need to help her," his friend Waleed texted back. "But what can we do ?"

في تلك الليلة، أرسل أمير صورة طائر النورس إلى بعض أصدقائه من المدرسة. لقد كانوا جميعًا قلقين بشأن الطائر. أرسل وليد صديقه رسالة نصية قائلًا : "نحن بحاجة إلى مساعدتها ولكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟"

Amir started taking action أمير بدء يأخذ خطوة

Amir wanted to take action. He started researching on the internet and discovered that people use billions of plastic bags and bottles in Egypt every year. A lot of them end up in the Nile or the sea. So, he sent a message to his friends.

أراد أمير أن يتخذ إجراء. فبدأ يبحث على الإنترنت واكتشف أن الناس يستخدمون مليارات الأكياس البلاستيكية والزجاجات في مصر كل سنة. الكثير منهم ينتهي بهم المطاف في النيل أو البحر. لذلك أرسل رسالة إلى أصدقائه.



General Exercises on "The middle"

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There was a paper bag around the seagull's leg. ◯
2. The seagull was in trouble. ◯
3. Amir took a picture of the seagull. ◯

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's ....
   a. beak b. wing c. leg d. feather
2. Amir sometimes does his .... in the evening on his tablet.
   a. sports b. homework c. shopping d. laundry
3. The seagull is in ....
   a. present b. trouble c. plane d. box
4. Amir's .... was on the table.
   a. phone b. bag c. tablet d. bottle

3 The End
نهاية القصة

Amir took action اتخذ أمير إجراء



The next day, Amir, Waleed, and some other friends met at Amir's house. They talked about different things that they could do. Amir took notes on his tablet:

في اليوم التالي، التقى أمير ووليد وبعض الأصدقاء الآخرين في منزل أمير. وتحدثوا عن أشياء مختلفة يمكن أن يفعلوها. كتب أمير ملاحظات على جهازه الحاسوبي اللوحي :

- Use cloth bags. We can give them to people at the market.
- Use biodegradable bags. Waleed's dad can use them at his store.
- Clean up the riverbanks. Anissa's dad can ask the fishermen to help us.
- Contact children in other towns. Dalia can send emails to her cousins.

استخدم الحقائب المصنوعة من القماش. يمكننا إعطائها للناس في السوق.

استخدم الأكياس القابلة للتحلل. والد وليد يمكنه استخدامها في متجره.

تنظيف ضفاف النهر. والد أنيسة يمكنه أن يطلب من الصيادين أن يساعدونا.

التواصل مع الأطفال في المدن الأخرى. تستطيع داليا إرسال رسائل بريد إلكتروني لأبناء أعمامها.

Grandma Volunteers to help الجدة تتطوع للمساعدة

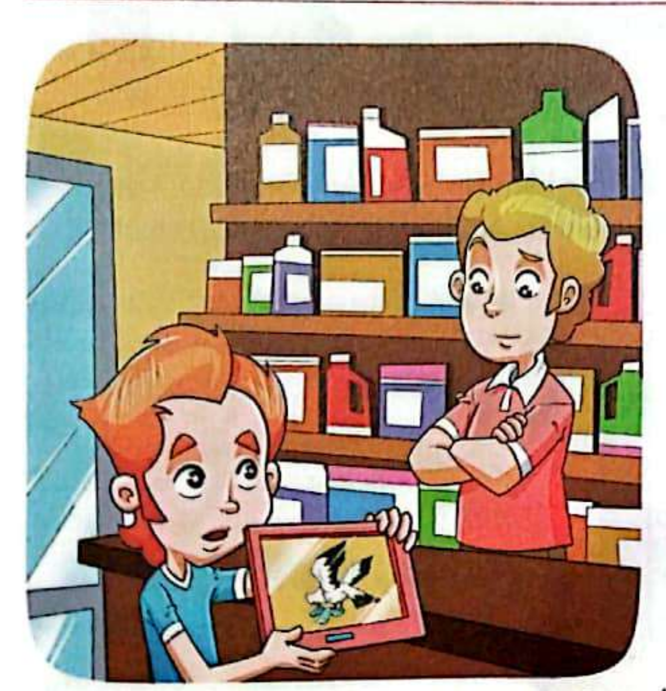


Amir explained his ideas to his grandma. She volunteered to help, too. "I have some old cotton cloth, Amir. I can sew some shopping bags for you. Will that help ?"

"Yes, Grandma, thank you! That will help a lot!".

وضح أمير أفكاره لجدته. تطوعت الجدة للمساعدة ايضًا وقالت : "يا أمير، لدى بعض القماش القطنى القديم. استطيع أن أخيط بعض اكياس التسوق لك. فهل سوف يفيدنا ذلك ؟" "نعم ياجدتى، شكرًا لك! هذا سوف يساعد كثيرًا !"

Waleed's dad can help يستطيع والد وليد المساعدة



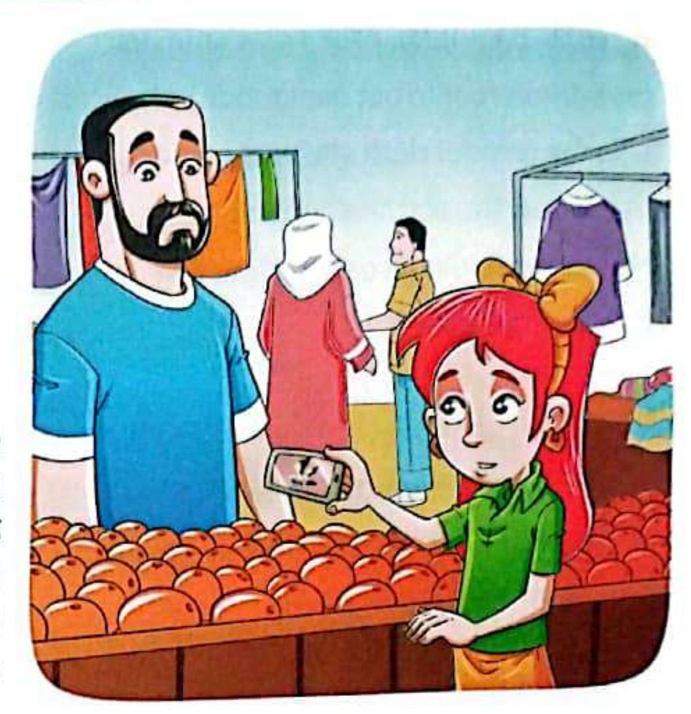
Waleed went to his dad's grocery store. "Dad, please help us. Let's stop using plastic bags in our store. We can use biodegradable ones instead." "Waleed, why should we do that ?" his father asked. Waleed showed him Amir's picture of the seagull. His dad looked sad. "OK, Waleed. I'll help you. We'll start using these biodegradable bags. We must help the river."

ذهب وليد إلى متجر البقالة الخاص بوالده. قال وليد "أبى، من فضلك ساعدنا. دعنا نتوقف عن استخدام الاكياس البلاستيكية فى متجرنا. يمكننا أن نستخدم الأكياس القابلة للتحلل بدلًا منها". سأله والده : لماذا يا وليد يجب أن نفعل هذا ؟" عرض عليه وليد الصورة التى التقطها أمير لطائر النورس. فظهر على والده الحزن. وقال : "حسنًا يا وليد، سوف أساعدك. سنبدأ بإستخدام هذه الاكياس القابلة للتحلل. يجب أن نساعد النهر."

Anissa's dad can help يستطيع والد أنيسة المساعدة

Anissa's dad works at the market. She showed him Amir's picture of the seagull and told him all about their plans.
"I'll ask the fishermen to help us take the plastic out of the river. They'll help us. The water is important for all of us, "he said.

يعمل والد أنيسة فى السـوق. عرضت عليه أنيسة الصـورة التى التقطها أمير لطائـر النورس وأخبرته كل شىء عن خططهم.
فقـال لها : "سـأطلب من الصيادين مسـاعدتنا لإزالة البلاستيك من النهر. فهم سوف يساعدوننا. فإن الماء هام جدًا لنا جميعًا".



Dalia and her cousins can help داليا وأبناء عمومتها يستطيعون المساعدة



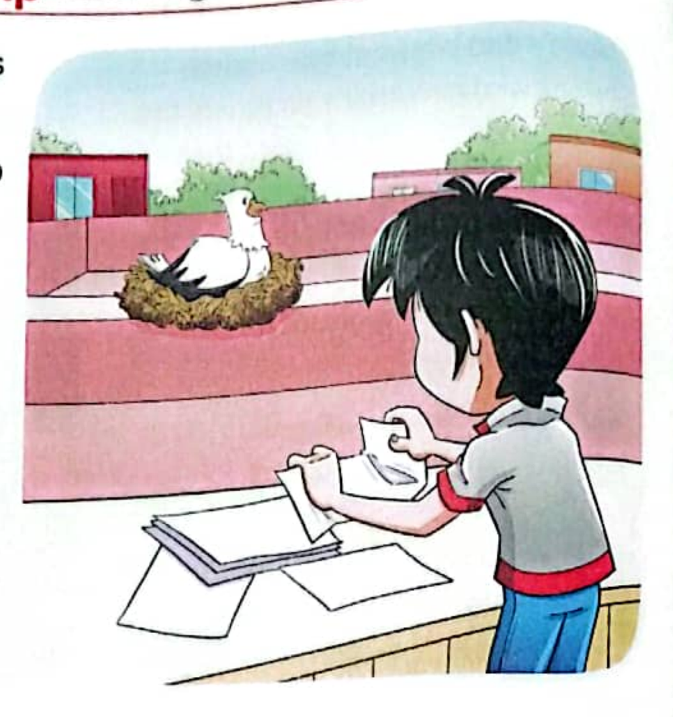
Dalia sent emails to all her cousins. They lived in other villages around Egypt. "Dalia, this is a great idea," her cousin Mariam wrote back. "We will be happy to help in our village, too."

أرسـلت داليا رسـائل بريد إلكترونية إلى أبناء عمومتها. هـم يعيشـون فى قُرى أخـرى حول مـصر. ردت عليها بنت عمها مريم "إنها فكرة رائعة يا داليا. سيسـعدنا أن نساعد فى قريتنا أيضًا."

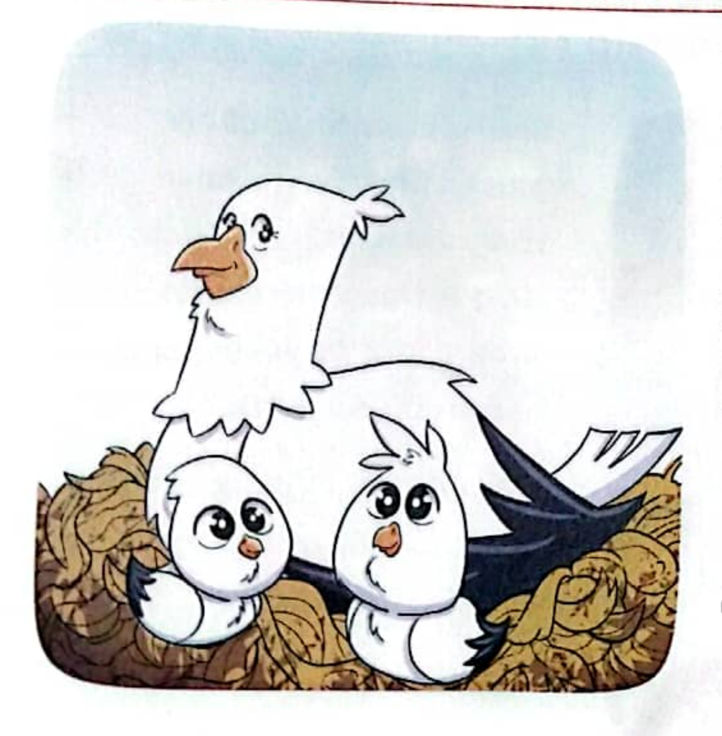
Grandma started to help بدأت الجدة في المساعدة

'A couple days later, Amir went onto his grandma's roof to get her laundry. He saw the colorful cloth she was going to use to sew the cotton shopping bags. He started folding it and putting it in the laundry basket.

بعد يومان، صعد أمير إلى سطح منزل جدته ليحضر الغسيل الخاص بها. رأى القماش الملون الذي سوف تستخدمه الجدة لخياطة اكياس التسوق القطنية. فبدأ بطويها ويضعها في سلة الغسيل.



Amir and his friends made a change أحدث أمير وأصدقائه تغييرًا



Then he saw the seagull in her nest. He remembered the plastic around her leg. Suddenly, two baby seagulls put their heads out of the nest. Amir smiled. He knew that he and his friends together could make a change.

بعد ذلك، رأى أمير طائر النورس في عشها. فتذكر البلاستيك الذي كان حول ساقها. وفجأة أخرج صغيرين من طيور النورس رأسهم من العش. ابتسم أمير. لقد أدرك أنه وأصدقائه معًا استطاعوا إحداث تغييرًا.

General Exercises on Story

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma offered to make some cloth bags.
2. Dalia sent emails to her cousins in villages around Egypt.
3. Amir's friends came to his house to talk.
4. Grandma doesn't like seagulls and thinks they're ugly.
5. Amir drew a picture of the seagull with his phone.
6. Amir took action to protect his environment.
7. Waleed's father decides to stop using biodegradable bags.
8. Anissa and Waleed's fathers wanted to help.
9. It was really hot on the roof during hanging up clothes.
10. Amir couldn't find out what happened to the plastic waste in Egypt.
11. Amir was sad when he saw the poor bird.
12. Amir looked down and saw trucks transporting boxes of food.
13. The fishermen could help to take the plastic out of the river.
14. The seagull had two babies.
15. Amir decided to organize a recycling project.
16. Amir and his friends talked about their plans.
17. Grandpa thought that Amir should do something.
18. Amir was upset when he saw the seagull with a plastic bag around her leg.
19. Waleed asked his dad to stop using plastic bags.
20. Amir's grandma used some old pieces of cotton cloth to make recycled shopping bags.
21. Amir thinks that people are using too much plastic in his village.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The seagull sat in her .... with two baby seagulls.
   a. bag b. home c. roof d. nest
2. .... baby seagulls put their heads out of the nest.
   a. Three b. Two c. Four d. Five
3. Amir took action to .... his environment.
   a. pollute b. save c. waste d. harm
4. Amir and his friends made a group of ....
   a. players b. singers c. volunteers d. teachers
5. Amir has a .... that sometimes he does his homework on.
   a. phone b. tablet c. computer d. laptop
6. Grandma asked Amir to check the ....
   a. washing machine b. phone c. bird d. nest
7. Women in the village .... the plastic bags.
   a. sew b. colored c. carried d. cut
8. Amir and Grandma put the .... in the sun to dry.
   a. birds b. animals c. laundry d. nest
9. Amir's friends wanted to help him with his ....
   a. plan b. homework c. work d. school
10. Grandma can help by .... cotton bags.
    a. sewing b. washing c. folding d. cutting
11. Amir helped his .... do the laundry.
    a. mom b. sister c. friend d. grandma
12. Amir's .... were worried about the bird.
    a. cousins b. parents c. friends d. teachers
13. Amir sent the .... of the seagull to his friends.
    a. babies b. nest c. photo d. eggs
14. Mariam is Dalia's ....
    a. friend b. sister c. cousin d. mom
15. There was a plastic bag around the .... leg.
    a. seagull's b. cat's c. dog's d. eagle's
16. Plastic is .... the birds.
    a. harming b. helping c. making d. feeding





Unit 7

General Exercises on lesson 1 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

This is a mountainous environment. It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. There are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to survive.

General Exercises on lesson 3 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

A hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast. When the sea goes up and down throughout the day, this is called a tide. Wind and wave turbines work by movement.

General Exercises on lesson 4 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

In Iceland, there is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.
When water gets hot, it makes steam. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity.

Test 1 on Unit 7 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

There aren't many houses or buildings in rural environment. The rural environment is sparsely populated. Not many people live here. It can have lots kinds of weather. There isn't a lot of traffic in the rural environment. So it's a quiet place to live in.

Test 2 on Unit 7 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas, and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, fossil fuels are non-renewable : when they run out, we can't find or make more of them.



Unit 8

General Exercises on lesson 1 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. We eat meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage.

General Exercises on lesson 2 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

My favorite meal for breakfast is ful medames. Ful medames never has any meat in it. For lunch, I like eating hawawshi. Also I like fatta which has layers of rice and bread.

General Exercises on lesson 3 :

• **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Today, Hana is wearing a blue dress. Hana usually wears a T-shirt and a skirt. Hana is helping mom in the kitchen. Mom cooks very well.



General Exercises on lesson 4 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. People celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival twice a year. There are four statues inside the temple. The sun shines on all of them except Ptah. Ptah is always in the dark.

General Exercises on lessons 5&6 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Long ago, the King asked a man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say.

Test 3 on Unit 8 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Hawawshi is delicious. Hawawshi is made with bread and beef or lamb. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked.

Test 4 on Unit 8 :

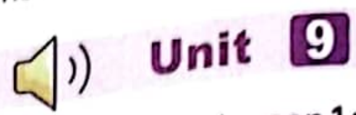
• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Laila is my cousin. She lives in a house near us in Cairo. She is good at school. She goes to school at seven o'clock every day.

February Test :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

A desert is a very dry environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find this environment on every continent, and it can be hot or cold.




Unit 9

General Exercises on lesson 1 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt. There were all connected to the Nile in ancient Egypt.

General Exercises on lesson 2 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Akil often helped his dad look after their goats. One day, he was sitting under a tree. Then he saw his friend Ottah. Ottah looked happy when he saw Akil. Ottah showed Akil a long wooden box. The box had beautiful pictures on the side.

General Exercises on lesson 3 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

There are a lot of things to see in Alexandria, including a Roman theatre, the old town and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.

General Exercises on lesson 4 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Adam and his friends want to do their school project. They learn about International Museum Day. They have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things, and they have to show which is the most popular exhibition. In their museum, they are going to put a room about art, and one about games.

Test 5 on Unit 9 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Sara was in the museum with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts. There were lots of very old things. Sara was reading the information about each object. She looked at an old senet game.

Test 6 on Unit 9 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Alexandria is one of the oldest cities. I live in Alexandria. It used to be the capital city of Egypt. It had the first library of Alexandria.



General Exercises on lesson 1 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. You must have an email account. An instant message is a private message.

General Exercises on lesson 2 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at a local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock.

General Exercises on lesson 3 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Samy's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it. The next morning, he signed into his account, but some comments were nasty.

General Exercises on lesson 4 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Hi, I'm Amira. As a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think they are interesting. I have time to write after school. If we improve our writing skills now, it will help us in the future.

Test 7 on Unit 10 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I'm in grade 4. I like to write short stories and reports about things that are interesting. I don't have time to write in the morning so I think after-school club is a perfect idea.

Test 8 on Unit 10 :

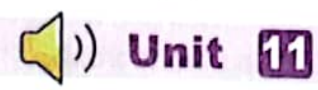
- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Hana is in grade four. She thinks the school should create a club for writers. She likes to write stories. Hana doesn't have time to write in the morning.

March Test :

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt.



Unit 11

General Exercises on lesson 1 :

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

I can't go to school on foot because my school is too far to walk to. We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination you want. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour because of the traffic jam.

General Exercises on lesson 2 :

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

It's important to have green spaces in a city. People are happier when they have green spaces, too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water. We need fewer cars too. We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on.

General Exercises on lesson 3 :

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. The first steam train was in Wales. High-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast. The transportation that uses gasoline is bad for the environment.

General Exercises on lesson 4 :

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

My city is located on the River Nile. There is a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. All the electricity in my city comes from solar energy in the desert. The homes have solar panels on their roofs, too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler.

Test 9 on Unit 11 :

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So ships and boats were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. The skiff is a simple boat from papyrus and rope.

Test 10 on Unit 11 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The world needs lots of trees. Trees take out carbon dioxide from the air. People cut down trees to build homes. It's bad for the environment. It's important to plant new trees.



General Exercises on lesson 1 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rocks and soil are moved from one place to another. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Burning fossil fuels results in climate change.

General Exercises on lessons 3&4 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

We need to try to slow climate change. On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately.

General Exercises on lessons 5&6 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I'm Nada. I'm in the supermarket now. I have some money and a shopping list. My mom wants to make koshari, so I'll buy onions, rice and chickpeas. My sister Hana doesn't like koshari. She wants to eat a burger. I'll buy some burgers and bread for her. For dessert, I'll buy some ice cream and fruits.

Test 11 on Unit 12 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

My birthday was last Friday. I went to the cinema with my mom and sister. My brother wanted to go to the restaurant. On Sunday, we went to the museum, but it was closed.

Test 12 on Unit 12 :

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Deforestation is a global emergency. The world's leaders must act quickly to save the world's forests. The world's leaders met today at a conference in Cairo to discuss the problem of deforestation.



Unit 7

Lesson 1:

Environments around the world

We have different environments around the world. In the rainforest, there are lots of trees and insects. It often rains and the temperature is hot. The desert is very dry. Plants and animals have to find clever ways to survive there. Polar environment is very cold and windy. There aren't any trees or flowers there.

Lesson 2:

Air pollution

There are two main types of pollution: air pollution and water pollution. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in factories.

When we burn fuels, they make carbon dioxide emissions. Over a long time, this can lead to climate change, because there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Now, people are working together to stop air pollution.

lesson 3:

From	nader@gmail.com
To	soha@gmail.com
Subject	Kinds of energy

Dear Soha,

How are you ? I am writing to you about energy. We have many kinds of energy. We have renewable and non-renewable energies. Renewable energy is clean. We have solar energy from the sun. We have tidal energy from the moving water. We have geothermal energy in hot places. Non-renewable energies can run out like fossil fuels and gas. These are burned in factories and this causes pollution.

Yours,

Nader

Lesson 4:

Hydroelectricity

Hydroelectricity means using energy from moving water to generate electricity. Hydroelectric dam uses energy in falling water to turn a turbine. The mechanical energy of the moving turbine is changed to electrical energy by a generator. Hydroelectricity is a clean kind of energy. It doesn't pollute the environment.

Lessons 5&6:

How we help our environment

To save our environment, we can use more renewable energy. We can use less fossil fuels. We should plant more trees and protect the forests. We should turn off lights and not waste electricity. We can recycle plastic and not drop garbage.

Test 1 on Unit 7:

Different environments

We have different environments in our world. In the mountainous environment, it can be difficult for people to live and travel. It can be cold with lots of rain. In rural environment, there aren't

many houses or buildings. It is sparsely populated. In urban environment, it is densely populated. Most people live there. There are lots of buildings.

Test 2 on Unit 7 :

The importance of the High Dam

We learned about the High Dam in school today.The High Dam was built to control flooding. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year.



Lesson 1 :

Eid Al-Adha

Eid Al-Adha is an important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. It lasts for four days. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and made a dish called fatta. They go to the mosque for prayers and they are grateful for all the good things in their lives.

Lesson 2 :

From	saleh20@yahoo.com
To	nader190@yahoo.com
Subject	My favorite meals

Dear Nader,

How are you ? I have many favorite meals. I like fatta. It has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often. I also like ful medames. It has beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli, and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread. What's your favorite meal ?

Your friend,

Saleh

Lesson 3 :

Traditional clothes

There's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear white galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. Men sometimes wear a striped kaftan over galabeya with a hizam, which is a colored sash around their body. Kaftan is usually made of linen.

Lesson 4 :

From	amira@yahoo.com
To	esraa@yahoo.com
Subject	Egypt

Hi Esraa,

I love Egypt. Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. It has so much to see. It has the Pyramids of Giza and the Red Sea. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with drink and food, and for inviting guests to their homes. Egypt has many traditional meals like rice, vegetable stew and stuffed vegetables. People bake kahk in Eid Al-Fitr. What's your favorite Egyptian food ?

Yours,

Amira

Test 3 on Unit 8 :

Traditional dishes

We have different traditional dishes. I love eating hawawshi. This is made with bread and beef or lamb. It is very delicious. Fatta is also a delicious meal. It has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce. It takes a long time to digest. Ful medames uses beans cooked with lemon juice and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.

Test 4 on Unit 8 :

A visit to Egypt

Last week, I visited Egypt with my family. Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see. We visited the Pyramids of Giza and the old Luxor Temple. We took a boat on the River Nile. We ate delicious food. We had koshari and fatta. We met friendly people.

February Test :

Grandma's cook book

Last week, I visited my grandma. She was making a meal in the kitchen. Grandma cooked very well. She had her own cook book. The book described different meals. It had pictures of delicious food. My grandma often shared recipes with family and friends.



Unit 9

Lesson 1 :

Agriculture in ancient Egypt

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land. It led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

Lesson 2 :

From	adam@yahoo.com
To	amrfawzi@yahoo.com
Subject	Visiting a museum

Dear Amr,

I hope you are fine. I was in the museum with my mom and dad. We were looking at Egyptian artifacts. I was reading the information about each artifact. We saw artifact looks like an old senet game. The archaeologists found it in the desert near Luxor. It was a nice day.

Yours,

Adam

Lesson 3 :

Amazing sites in Egypt

Egypt is a very wonderful country. Lots of tourists visit amazing sites in Egypt every year. There are the Pyramids and Sphinx at Giza. Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs. There are lots to see in Alexandria such as Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel.

Lessons 5&6 :

The statue of Amenhotep III

The statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters, is the largest statue of a family group in Egypt. It is about 3,400 years old. It is made of limestone. It is 7 meters tall. It is 4.4 meters wide. It is from Luxor.

Test 5 on Unit 9 :

Tutankhamun's mask

Last week, I went to the Valley of the Kings. I went there with my family. We saw many amazing monuments.
I saw Tutankhamun's mask there. It was beautiful. It is over 3,000 years old. It is 54 cm tall. It is made of gold. I will visit it again. It is amazing.

Test 6 on Unit 9 :

A visit to Alexandria

Alexandria is a beautiful city in Egypt. There are lots of things to see and do there. Last year, I went to Alexandria with my family. It is not far from Cairo. The journey took two hours. We visited many amazing places like the Roman theatre and Qaitbay Citadel. We had a nice time at Alexandria Library. It is very famous all over the world. We enjoyed our visit to Alexandria.



Lesson 1 :

From	magdy@gmail.com
To	maher@gmail.com
Subject	Means of communication

Hello Magdy,

I want to tell you about means of communication. A presentation and website are means of communication. A presentation is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web.Websites are usually about one topic.Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

Yours,

Maher

Lesson 2 :

Rules to share a story

You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type. You should check your spelling. You shouldn't have any spelling mistakes. At the end, you should prepare your work well.

Lesson 3 :

Social media

You can sign up for a social media account. You can make some cyberfriends online. You can post videos. You can watch some cool videos of others. But watch out, don't be a close friend with any strangers. You can turn off the comments.

Lesson 4 :

From	eyad@yahoo.com
To	omar@yahoo.com
Subject	After-school writers' club

Dear Omar,

How are you ? What do you think about school clubs ? I think the school should create an after-school writers' club. I think it is a good idea. Most of us like writing short stories. So, the school should help us and create the club after school soon. If we improve our writing skills now, it will help us in high school and college.

Yours,

Eyad

Lessons 5&6 :

Air pollution

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

Test 7 on Unit 10 :

Means of communication

There are different ways to send messages from one place to another. Today, we use technology like electronic devices. Presentation is a way to share information. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is similar to a blog, but we post videos instead of written texts.

Test 8 on Unit 10 :

Social media

Social media is a very important thing in our life. It helps us communicate with others. You can make some cyberfriends online. You can also learn new things online. But it has some disadvantages so you should be careful when you use social media. Never share your password with other people.

March Test :

Using social media

There are many advantages and disadvantages for using social media. You can make some cyberfriends online. I can watch their videos. I posted nice videos on my account yesterday, but I had some nasty comments. My mom helped me to turn off the comments.



Lesson 2 :

From	seif@gmail.com
To	fady@gmail.com
Subject	How to create a cleaner urban environment

Hi Fady,

How are you ? I live in an urban environment. I think about how to create a cleaner urban environment. Green spaces are very important to us. We can create cleaner urban environment through planting more trees and plants. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water. We need fewer cars, too. We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. We need more recycling bins.

Yours,

Seif

Lesson 3 :

Problems of transportation

Transportation causes a lot of problems. Some vehicles use gasoline, which causes air pollution. People bought cars to make their lives easier. Today, there are electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships that don't use gasoline.

Lesson 4 :

Your plan for an ideal city

I have many ideas for having an ideal city. We need to have green spaces to have cleaner air and parks. We also must use green vehicles like bikes. We can ride bikes on bike paths. We can use ecological boats which are quiet and green. We can also produce electricity from solar energy which is clean.

Lessons 5&6 :

Types of transportation

We have many types of transportation. People in Egypt use different kinds of them. Workers use buses or subway to get to their work. Children in the country use ferries to cross the river or use boats. Others go by cars with their families. I go to work by my electric car to stop pollution.

Test 9 on Unit 11 :

From	hany@yahoo.com
To	maged@gmail.com
Subject	Transportation

Dear Maged,

How are you ? I would like to tell you about transportation. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. The air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. They don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.

See you soon.

Yours,

Hany

Test 10 on Unit 11 :

" Transportation in ancient Egypt "

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river. Boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. People could travel short distances in these boats.

Unit 12

Lessons 3&4 :

Climate change

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Many things cause climate change like using fossil fuels. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home. We must stop using coal and fossil fuels. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

Lessons 5&6 :

Egyptian food

Food is an important part in our lives. I love Egyptian food most specially rice and beans. Egypt produces different kinds of food. Egyptian farmers grow rice, chickpeas and onions. There's food that comes from plants like rice and potatoes. Some food comes from animals like meat and fish. I often eat Egyptian food because it's better for the environment.

Test 11 on Unit 12 :

Egyptian dishes

Egyptian food is famous all over the world. We have many dishes that are very famous. Koshari is one of our best food. It consists of lentils, pasta, rice, chickpeas and onions. Egyptian bread is also famous. We make bread from wheat. If you want to eat something contains meat, you can eat hawawshi. It's made with bread and beef or lamb. We sometimes eat it with salad.

Test 12 on Unit 12 :

Erosion and drought

Erosion is a natural process. It happens by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry.

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم ٢٠١٠٢ - ٦ - ٢ - ٢٤٢

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

Interactive Notebook

الصف الرابع الابتدا... الدراسي الثاني

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

للواجب المنزلى

CONNECT Plus

دليل ولي الأمر

Parents' Guide

بالداخل كراسة المعاصر للواجب المنزلى

4th Primary 2024

SECOND TERM

Contents

1 El-Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

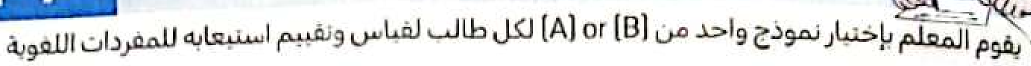
2 A week is enough مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط



PART 1
UNIT 7

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة





I Write & Practice



Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	غابة مطيرة	1. There are lots of trees, plants and flowers in the ....
....	صحراء	2. It is very .... in the desert.
....	جاف	3. Not many people live in the .... environment.
....	قروي / ريفي	4. The weather is cold and ....
....	حضري / مدني	
....	عاصف	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	تلوث الهواء	1. People can .... the environment.
....	محيط	2. Driving cars and trucks causes ....
....	يتلف / يدمر	3. Scientists are finding ways to use ....
....	قفازات	4. Garbage in the .... is bad for the animals.
....	وقود	
....	طاقة	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	حركة المرور	1. There are .... in the coastal environment.
....	مستنقع	2. The urban environment is a .... area.
....	عاصمي / حضري	3. There is .... in top of the mountains.
....	جليد	4. .... has a lot of ice.
....	ممطر	
....	القطب الشمالي	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	غازثاني أكسيد الكربون	1. We are picking up ....
....	يحرق / يحترق	2. .... emissions are bad.
....	قمامة / مهملات	3. Chemicals from factories cause ....
....	أنهار	4. There is a problem with .... pollution.
....	تلوث المياه	
....	بلاستيك	



Write the meaning ⟶ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

Write the meaning	
متجدد	....
يولد	....
طاقة شمسية	....
مختلف	....
السد العالي	....
بخار	....

1. .... energy doesn't run out.
2. We get .... from the sun.
3. We .... electricity from the River Nile.
4. Hot water makes ....

Lessons 5&6

Write the meaning	
مقال	....
يفهم	....
يزرع	....
خاص / مميز	....
كوكب	....
تغيير المناخ	....

1. I wrote an .... about history.
2. It's important to .... trees.
3. We must protect our ....
4. Carbon dioxide causes ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning ⟶ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

Write the meaning	
طاقة المد والجزر	....
بترول / نفط	....
غير متجدد	....
موارد طبيعية	....
الزراعة	....
كهرباء	....

1. We can use .... from the moving water.
2. Fossil fuels are ....
3. Waterwheels help with ....
4. Turbines can make ....

Lessons 5&6

Write the meaning	
مخ	....
مشروع	....
يمتص	....
غلاف جوى	....
ينبض	....
موطن / منزل	....

1. I started a .... to build houses.
2. Forests can .... carbon dioxide.
3. The heart .... about 35 million times a year.
4. Trees can be .... for animals.

II Important 20 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

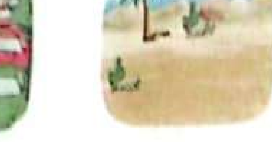
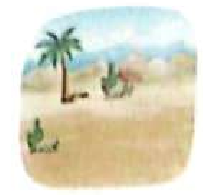
1. machine
2. traffic
3. mammals
4. coal
5. High Dam

6. gloves
7. garbage

8. desert
9. brain

10. steam
11. waterwheel
12. farm
13. volcano
14. buildings
15. one thousand
16. rural environment
17. plastic
18. factory
19. one million
20. swamp

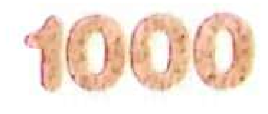




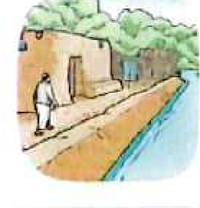
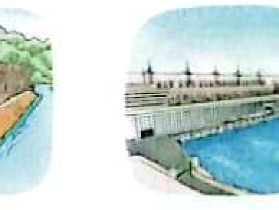


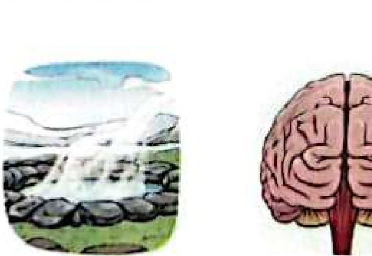

traffic

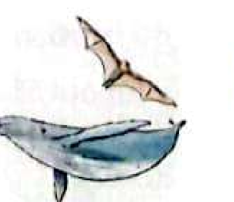












Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم بإختيار نموذج واحد من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
يحتفل	....	1. The ancient Egyptians .... Sham El-Nessim.
شروق الشمس	....	
مشمس	....	2. Sham El-Nessim is usually .... and warm.
إسلامي	....	3. Eid Al-Adha is an .... festival.
فانوس	....	4. I made a special .... for Ramadan.
شمعة	....	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
لحم	....	1. Ful medames never has .... in it.
لذيذ	....	2. This meal looks ....
بسهولة	....	3. Hawawshi is made with bread and beef or ....
لحم الضأن	....	4. I put the food in the .... to heat it.
فرن	....	
خل	....	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
فصل الربيع	....	1. Sham El-Nessim is in the ....
هدية	....	2. The .... has rides for children.
ملاهي	....	3. In Eid Al-Adha many people .... a sheep.
يُضحّي	....	4. We go to the .... for prayers.
مسجد	....	
صلوات / المصلين	....	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
وصفة طهي	....	1. There are many .... in the cook book.
عصير ليمون	....	2. I like to .... new things.
يحاول / يجرب	....	3. We use fish to make ....
صعب	....	4. We eat ful medames with ....
صيادية	....	
خبز	....	



Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

حذاء مفتوح (صندل)	1. I wear .... on my foot.
مجوهرات	2. Women usually wear ....
فضفاض / واسع	3. I saw the .... of Abu Simbel.
معبد	4. There are very big .... of Ramses II.
تمثال	

Lessons 5&6

حكاية أسطورية	1. He was .... of the king.
خائف	2. There was a bad ....
يعود	3. I was strong and ....
عاصفة	4. I saw a .... snake.
صبور	
ضخم	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

أكمام	1. Galabeya has long ....
نباتي	2. He doesn't eat meat. He is ....
وشاح	3. People bake special .... called kahk.
معصم اليد	4. We can see the .... of Giza.
كعك محلّى	
الأهرامات	

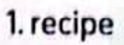
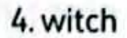
Lessons 5&6

خادم	1. The king has many ....
بحّار	2. I was a .... on a boat.
موجة	3. I swam to an ....
جزيرة	4. I .... into the sea.
يسقط	
مجموعة	

II Important 20 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

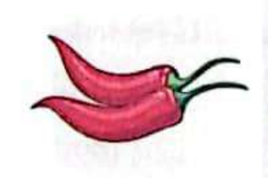

1. recipe
2. mosque
3. present

4. witch
5. fire
6. fatta
7. lantern
8. island
9. king
10. temple
11. sailor
12. chilli
13. buttons
14. jars
15. sunrise
16. fairground
17. statue
18. ful medames
19. jewelry
20. cookies













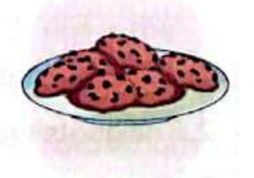








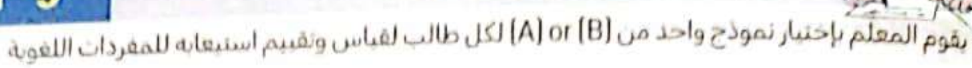





PART 1 UNIT 9

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	تراث	1. All countries have their own ....
....	مؤرخ	2. The Nile used to .... every year.
....	نظام	3. The .... were full of water.
....	يفيض / فيضان	4. I'm very .... my heritage.
....	حقول	
....	فخور بـ	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	غني	1. I showed him a long .... box.
....	خشبي	2. I .... to my friend.
....	يلوّح	3. She was in the .... with her mom.
....	أخيرًا	4. Archaeologists found .... in the desert.
....	متحف	
....	لعبة سينيت	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	محاصيل	1. Farmers cut the .... and stored them.
....	تقويم	2. .... have learned interesting things.
....	عالم آثار	3. I'm very .... Egypt's heritage.
....	هوية	4. The Nile makes the soil more ....
....	مهتم بـ	
....	خصبة / مثمرة	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	عدّاد	1. .... are interested in history.
....	عادي / مألوف	2. The goats were walking over a small ....
....	تل	3. They were looking at Egyptian ....
....	علماء الآثار	4. I was the .... in the game.
....	قطع أثرية	
....	فائز	



Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

- أداة ....
- سكين حاد ....
- طين / صلصال ....
- مقبرة ....
- المسرح الروماني ....
- يدفن ....

1. Archaeologists found artifacts such as ....
2. Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from ....
3. Saqqara has many ....
4. Ancient Egyptians .... their kings and queens.

Lessons 5&6

- الحجر الجيري ....
- الموت ....
- قارب شمسي ....
- خريطة ....
- وادي الملوك ....
- الأكبر ....

1. The statue of Amenhotep III is made of ....
2. The Pharaoh Khufu had a ....
3. Tutankhamun is from ....
4. The statue of Amenhotep III is .... statue.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

- مصر القديمة ....
- قناع وجه ....
- عِطر ....
- مكتبة ....
- فأس ....
- رحلة بحرية ....

1. Artifacts can tell about how people lived in ....
2. Ancient Egyptians made pots for ....
3. Alexandria has the first ....
4. Many tourists travel down the Nile on a ....

Lessons 5&6

- شخص ....
- ذهب ....
- واسع / عريض ....
- زوجة ....
- العرش ....
- يسافر ....

1. Tutankhamun's mask is made of ....
2. Tiye is the .... of Amenhotep III.
3. The pharaoh was sitting on a ....
4. Tutankhamun's mask .... all over the world.

II Important 75 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

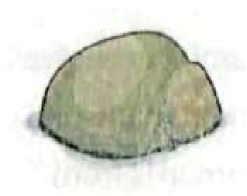
تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية















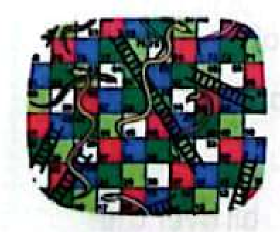




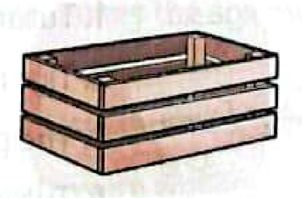













1. stone

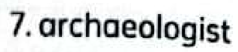

2. vase


3. crops


4. site


5. pottery


6. winner


7. archaeologist


8. calendar

9. wooden box

10. board game

11. mask

12. knife

13. engravings

14. hill

15. map

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Meaning	Word
....	رسائل
....	خبير
....	رقمي
....	تكنولوجيا
....	مدونة
....	مشابه لـ

1. People used birds to send ....
2. An email is a .... form of a letter.
3. A .... is a special kind of website.
4. A vlog is .... a blog.

Lesson 2

Meaning	Word
....	برنامج
....	حقيبة ظهر
....	نصيحة
....	كاتب
....	يشارك
....	لوحة مفاتيح

1. I put my school items in my ....
2. My mom is a ....
3. .... your story with your friends.
4. I look at the .... to type.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Meaning	Word
....	عبر الإنترنت
....	شخصي / خاص
....	باستثناء / ما عدا
....	أجهزة إلكترونية
....	حساب
....	منصة

1. An instant message is a .... message.
2. We use technology like ....
3. You must have an email .... to send messages.
4. You can send messages on a social media ....

Lesson 2

Meaning	Word
....	لا يصدق / مذهل
....	يلمس
....	أرضية
....	كراسة
....	مغامرة
....	جريدة

1. I read an .... story.
2. I opened my .... to write.
3. The story is about a great .... around Africa.
4. Publish your story in the school ....

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

جرس	1. The school .... rang at 2 o'clock.
يشاهد	2. I .... videos online.
يسجل دخول	3. I .... for a social media account.
صفحة	4. I have to ask my .... before going out.
الوالدين	
إعدادات	

Lessons 5&6

مُضر	1. .... is a big problem in Egypt.
تلوث الهواء	2. When we burn ...., we make pollution worse.
وقود حفري	3. Outdoor pollution is produced by cars and ....
مصانع	4. We have smog free .... which clean the air.
عصري	
أبراج	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3&4

يبدأ	1. I made some .... online.
أصدقاء عبر الإنترنت	2. Some comments on the post were ....
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	3. You shouldn't .... your friends.
بغيض / كريه	4. I introduced myself and talked about my ....
يسخر من	
هواية	

Lessons 5&6

خطير / جاد	1. Pollution is a .... problem in big cities.
زميل دراسة	2. Indoor pollution is .... our homes.
بالداخل	3. Car companies started producing ....
طبيعة	4. Factories put .... on the smokestacks.
سيارات كهربائية	
مصفاة تنقية الغازات	

II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

















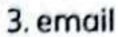






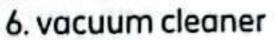
1. website


2. adventure


3. email

4. dust

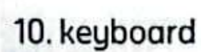
5. carrier pigeon

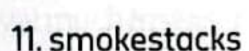

6. vacuum cleaner

7. backpack

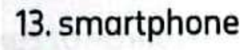
8. letter

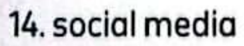

9. writer


10. keyboard


11. smokestacks


12. newspaper


13. smartphone


14. social media

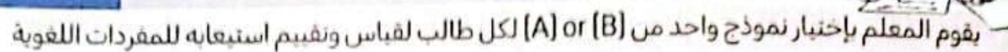
15. video

PART 1

UNIT 11

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة


يقوم المعلم بإختيار نموذج واحد من [B] or [A] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
Lesson 1		
أنشطة	....	1. There are a lot of .... to do in the city.
أسوأ	....	2. There are public .... in the city.
وسائل النقل	....	3. I go to school .... because it's near.
بطيء	....	4. Buses don't always go to the .... you want.
سيرًا على الأقدام	....	
وجهة الوصول	....	
Lesson 2		
غضبان	....	1. .... means to use again.
إعادة الاستخدام	....	2. We need .... for people to ride bikes.
ممرات الدراجات	....	3. Volunteers pick up .... in parks.
مستقبل	....	4. I went to the science .... yesterday.
مهملات	....	
متحف	....	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
Lesson 1		
ازدحام مروري	....	1. .... is a big problem in the cities.
كن حذرًا	....	2. The .... to school takes an hour.
رحلة قصيرة	....	3. .... are often red and we can't move .
إشارات المرور	....	4. You must wear your .... when you drive.
شرق	....	
حزام الأمان	....	
Lesson 2		
متطوع / يتطوع	....	1. .... work for no money.
مساحات خضراء	....	2. It's important to have .... in the city.
يتعلم	....	3. We can .... plastic.
يعيد تدوير	....	4. Over 1.000 .... live in my village.
بيئة	....	
سكان / مواطنين	....	



Model A

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lessons 3&4

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
ينتقل / يتحرك	....	1. We use transportation to .... from one place to another .
بضائع	....	2. The .... in London opened in 1863.
مترو الأنفاق	....	3. We need vehicles that use ....
طريق سريع	....	4. Wind energy is ....
متجدد	....	
طاقة نظيفة	....	

Lessons 5&6

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
عيوب	....	1. Transportation has advantages and ....
ممطر	....	2. The weather is very ....
سيارة أجرة (تاكسى)	....	3. School buses keep children................and warm.
آمن	....	4. Tourists like to take................ trips on the lake.
ضيف	....	
قارب طويل ضيق (زورق)	....	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lessons 3&4

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
يتحكم في	....	1. Humans began to use animals like..............
بغل (حيوان)	....	2. Ships with................ could travel much faster.
محرك بخاري	....	3. Large trees provide.................
الصيد	....	4. We should stop using.................
ظِل	....	
وقود حفري	....	

Lessons 5&6

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
يركب (دراجة)	....	1. A lot of children................ bikes to school.
قطار	....	2. You don't have to go up hills or.................
جبال	....	3. In the winter, there's a lot of ....
جزيرة	....	4. There are heavy rains called ....
جليد	....	
أمطار موسمية	....	

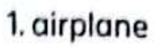
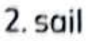
II Important 75 words

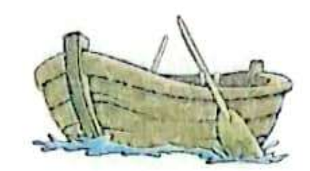
اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

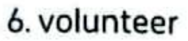
تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية





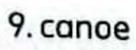
1. airplane 
2. sail 
3. subway 

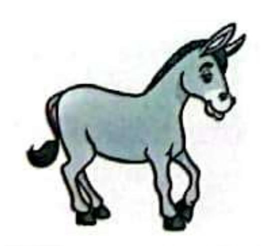




4. snowstorm
5. seat belt
6. volunteer 





7. rocket
8. wagon
9. canoe 

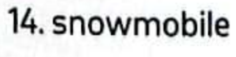
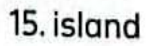




10. ferry
11. traffic lights
12. steam train 



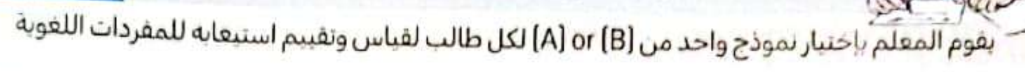


13. mule 
14. snowmobile 
15. island 



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

البيئة	1. .... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.
جفاف	2. .... is the people and things that are around you.
يتقلص / يتآكل	3. .... can make the ground very dry.
طبيعي	4. The heavy rain can cause the land to ....
رخام	
نهر جليدي / جليد	

Lesson 2

جريدة	1. Electric cars are ....
قواعد / قوانين	2. I read about the accident in the ....
محيط	3. The .... of the game are simple.
صديق للبيئة	4. She lives near the ...., but she can't swim.
غطاء جليدي	
سيارة كهربائية	

Or

Model B

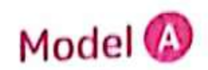
Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

حجر الجير	1. .... means that there is too much farming.
تعرية / تآكل	2. The Sphinx is made of a stone called ....
يرتفع	3. .... is a natural process.
موجات المد (تسونامي)	4. Climate change causes sea levels to ....
نقص في المياه	
الزراعة الكثيفة	

Lesson 2

الطاقة الشمسية	1. When it ...., water falls from the sky.
ظل	2. We get .... from the sun.
موطن	3. It was a hot, sunny day, but luckily their seats were in the ....
يحرق	4. The Amazon Rainforest is the .... of many species of animals.
يهتم	
تمطر	



Model A

Write the meaning ➜ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3 & 4

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
مراهق	....	1. My brother is thirteen. He's a ....
معقد	....	2. We can recycle ...., plastic and glass.
ورق	....	3. 96 parties .... the Paris Agreement.
يوقع / يمضى	....	4. The .... is a formal written agreement between two nations.
مجهود	....	
معاهدة	....	

Lessons 5 & 6

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
حمص	....	1. .... is food from plants.
برجر	....	2. The bread is made from ....
قمح	....	3. I buy food from the local ....
سوق	....	4. It's a long .... from Egypt to Russia.
مزارع / فلاح	....	
طريق	....	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning ➜ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 3 & 4

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
مؤتمر	....	1. The .... is a formal meeting.
احتباس حراري	....	2. Nations try to slow ....
طوارئ	....	3. The short description of a picture is called the ....
تعليق على الصورة	....	4. The .... had a very important meeting.
غابات الأمازون المطيرة	....	
القادة	....	

Lessons 5 & 6

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
قائمة طعام	....	1. Meat comes from ....
أمريكا الجنوبية	....	2. Ships and planes are .... the environment.
طبق	....	3. I'm .... I want to eat.
سيء لـ	....	4. I eat .... at the beginning of a meal.
جائع	....	
مقبلات	....	



II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.





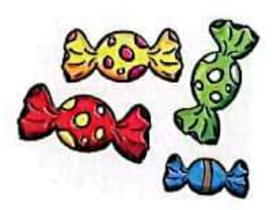






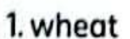


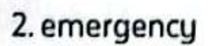


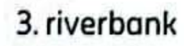








1. wheat


2. emergency


3. riverbank


4. chickpeas


5. deforestation


6. conference


7. flood

8. glacier

9. electric car


10. polar bear

11. dessert

12. drought

13. teenager

14. pasta

15. menu

PART 2

Accumulative assessments on Dictation



تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [B] او [A] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية

Units 7,8,9 & 10

Model A

1. vacuum cleaner
2. wet
3. program
4. sleeves
5. expert
6. writer
7. absorb
8. backpack

١. تعليق
٢. مخترع
٣. انفجار بركاني
٤. تقرير
٥. تكنولوجيا
٦. نصيحة
٧. وقت فراغ
٨. رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Model B

1. theatre
2. opinion
3. cyberfriends
4. online
5. striped
6. dust
7. hill
8. perfect

١. وقود حفري
٢. ثدييات
٣. إعدادات
٤. مغامرة
٥. الصناعة
٦. نباتي
٧. خيال
٨. وشاح

Units 7,8,9,10 & 11

Model A

1. olive oil
2. shade
3. seat belt
4. ferry
5. fire
6. vehicle
7. keyboard
8. transportation

١. يعيد تدوير
٢. متطوع
٣. اتجاه
٤. نبات البردي
٥. نخلة
٦. جامعة
٧. سيارة أجرة
٨. غير متجدد

Model B

1. traffic jam
2. distance
3. strong
4. airplane
5. advantages
6. cruise
7. residents
8. nature

١. مشكلة
٢. بلاستيك
٣. مترو الأنفاق
٤. مساحات خضراء
٥. دراجة جليدية
٦. أعشاب
٧. موسم الحصاد
٨. بخار ماء

Units 7,8,9,10,11 & 12

Model A

1. garbage
2. riverbank
3. monuments
4. erosion
5. roof
6. ingredients
7. wheat
8. harmful

١. محيط
٢. طوارئ
٣. زواحف
٤. مراهق
٥. احتباس حراري
٦. فيضان
٧. جائع
٨. جفاف

Model B

1. document
2. vinegar
3. eco-friendly
4. road
5. chickpeas
6. garlic
7. lentil
8. shade

١. مجرى مائي
٢. رخام
٣. مستقبل
٤. قائمة طعام
٥. خصبة / مثمرة
٦. صاخب / ضوضاء
٧. نهر جليدي / جليد
٨. خطاب

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

اليوم الأول والثانى

Revision on Vocabulary & Language



مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي وردت في المنهج.

اليوم الثالث

Listening, Reading & Writing Skills



عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على افضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الرابع

Important Paragraphs and Emails

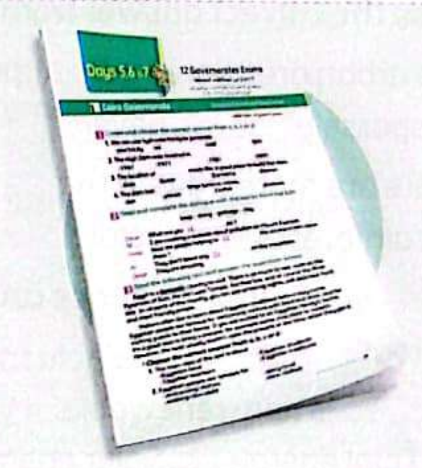


مراجعة عامة على أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني التي وردت في المنهج.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

اختبارات مجمعة من امتحانات المحافظات

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لاحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤



١٢ اختبار مجمع من امتحانات المدارس من مختلف المحافظات.

Days 1 & 2



Vocabulary & Language

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي وردت في المنهج.

I Vocabulary

• **Unit 7**

coastal	ساحلي	densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية
rainforests	غابات مطيرة	polar	قطبي
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	fuel	وقود
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	garbage	قمامة
water pollution	تلوث المياه	climate change	تغير المناخ
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	emissions	انبعاثات
recycle	يعيد التدوير	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	coal	فحم
renewable	متجدد	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
non-renewable	غير متجدد	waterwheel	ساقية
High Dam	السد العالي	green spaces	مساحات خضراء
machine	آلة	planet	كوكب
absorb	يمتص	tonnes	أطنان



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The urban areas are .... populated.
   a. sparsely b. never c. densely d. less
2. There are more trees in the .... habitat.
   a. rainforests b. polar c. coastal d. desert
3. The .... from factories cause air pollution.
   a. toys b. bags c. emissions d. food
4. .... is non-renewable.
   a. Tidal energy b. Solar energy c. Wind energy d. Coal
5. Forests can .... carbon dioxide.
   a. eat b. absorb c. cry d. release

Unit 8

festival	احتفال / مهرجان	lantern	فانوس
calender	تقويم	mosque	مسجد
celebrations	احتفالات	prayers	صلوات / دعوات
recipe	وصفة طهي	chilli	فلفل حار
herbs	أعشاب	lamb	لحم الضأن / خروف صغير
oven	فرن	beef	لحم بقري
buttons	أزرار	linen	كتان
jewelry	مجوهرات	leather	جلد مدبوغ
sleeve	كُم	loose	واسع / فضفاض
striped	مقلم/مخطط	vegetarian	نباتي
guest	ضيف	generous	كريم / سخي
host	مُضيف	shipwreck	حطام سفينة
fable	حكاية أسطورية	sailor	بحار
servant	خادم	island	جزيرة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We go to the .... for prayers.
   a. hospital   b. garden   c. mosque   d. museum
2. For Ramadan, I made a special .... with a candle inside.
   a. oven   b. lantern   c. paper   d. ball
3. We eat .... in fatta.
   a. meat   b. ful medames   c. fish   d. chilli
4. The galabeya has .... sleeves.
   a. short   b. long   c. small   d. old
5. He gives presents to all his family. He is ....
   a. generous   b. bad   c. terrible   d. sad

Unit 9

temple	معبد	archaeologist	عالم آثار
heritage	تراث / ميراث	crops	محاصيل
fertile	خصب	the flooding season	موسم الفيضان
the growing season	موسم الزراعة	the harvesting season	موسم الحصاد

wooden box	صندوق خشبى	winner	فائز
tomb	مقبرة	senet game	لعبة سينيت
pottery	فخار	perfume	عطر
clay	طين / صلصال	cruise	رحلة بحرية نهرية
engravings	نقوش	mask	قناع وجه
limestone	الحجر الجيرى	statue	تمثال
gold	ذهب	axe	فأس
Pharaoh	فرعون	death	الموت



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The fields were full of water in the .... season.
   a. harvesting   b. flooding   c. growing   d. dry
2. Farmers cut the crops in the .... season.
   a. wet   b. growing   c. flooding   d. harvesting
3. I won in the game. I'm the ....
   a. winner   b. loser   c. beginner   d. last one
4. Tutankhamun's mask is made of ....
   a. wood   b. linen   c. gold   d. ivory
5. Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from ....
   a. clay   b. oil   c. vase   d. knife

• Unit 10

email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	private	خاص
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	website	موقع إلكتروني
technology	تكنولوجيا	electronic devices	أجهزة إلكترونية
digital	رقمى	backpack	حقيبة ظهر
adventure	مغامرة	grammar mistake	خطأ نحوى (لغوى)
check	يتحقق / يفحص	nasty	بغيض / كريه
cyberfriends	أصدقاء عبر الإنترنت	horrible	مروع / رهيب
report	تقرير	fiction	خيال
perfect	مثالى	dust	تراب / غبار
scrubber	جهاز منظف الغازات (مدخنة تنقية الغازات)	vacuum cleaner	مكنسة
fossil fuel	وقود حفرى	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
smokestacks	مداخن	air pollution	تلوث الهواء



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدرب تلقائي على المفردات اللغوية

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. A .... is a home page on the world wide web.
   a. prize b. website c. device d. vlog
2. An instant message is a .... message.
   a. general b. famous c. private d. public
3. You should .... your spelling before publishing a story.
   a. check b. swim c. let d. touch
4. Don't write .... comments to someone. That's bad.
   a. nice b. good c. nasty d. beautiful
5. The .... make air pollution worse.
   a. trees b. flowers c. rain d. fossil fuels

Unit 11

traffic jam	الازدحام المروري	traffic lights	إشارات المرور
public transportation	وسائل النقل العام	vehicles	مركبات
seat belt	حزام أمان	destination	الوجهة [المكان المقصود]
volunteer	متطوع	neighborhood	حي
resident	مواطن	recycling bins	سلات إعادة التدوير
garbage = waste	قمامة / مخلفات	airplane	طائرة
steam train	قطار بخاري	streetcar	ترام
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	papyrus	نبات البردي
rocket	صاروخ	mule	بغل [حيوان]
ferry	عبّارة نهرية	waterway	ممر / مجرى مائي
snowmobile	دراجة جليدية	snowstorm	عاصفة ثلجية
shade	ظل	driverless	ذاتي القيادة [بدون سائق]



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. You must wear your seat .... while driving.
   a. gloves b. hat c. jacket d. belt
2. The traffic .... are often red.
   a. lights b. rules c. vehicles d. planes

3. We should use .... bins.

a. cycle b. recycling c. terrible d. harmful

4. People can go to the moon by ....

a. mules b. trains c. rockets d. ships

5. A .... moves on snow.

a. snowmobile b. canoe c. rocket d. train

• Unit 12

erosion	تعرية / تآكل	current	تيار مائي - جارى
flood	فيضان	glacier	نهر جليدي / جليد
drought	جفاف	water shortage	نقص المياه
riverbank	ضفة النهر	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
landslide	انهيار أرضى	ocean	محيط
newspaper	جريدة	polar bear	الدب القطبى
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	teenager	مراهق
conference	مؤتمر	emergency	طوارئ
agreement	اتفاق/اتفاقية	deforestation	إزالة الغابات
leader	قائد	lentils	عدس
wheat	قمح	ingredients	مكونات
appetizer	مقبلات	menu	قائمة طعام



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Drought happens when there is no ....

a. books b. paper c. water d. sand

2. A .... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.

a. glacier b. drought c. tsunami d. flood

3. My brother is 15 years old. He is a/an ....

a. teenager b. adult c. child d. baby

4. .... means to cut down trees.

a. Evaporation b. Deforestation

c. Condensation d. Precipitation

5. Basbousa is my favorite ....

a. animal b. vegetable c. fruit d. dessert







Unit 7

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

Describing actions happening now. وصف الأحداث التى تحدث الآن.

Formation التكوين

Subject + (am / is/ are) + inf. + ing

- - I'm walking to school.

Subject + (am not / isn't/ aren't) + inf. + ing

- - He isn't walking to school today.

Wh- word + (am / is/ are) + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?

- What're you doing ?
  - I'm writing an essay about plastic pollution in our seas.

Auxiliary verb + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?

- Is she watching TV ?
  - Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.



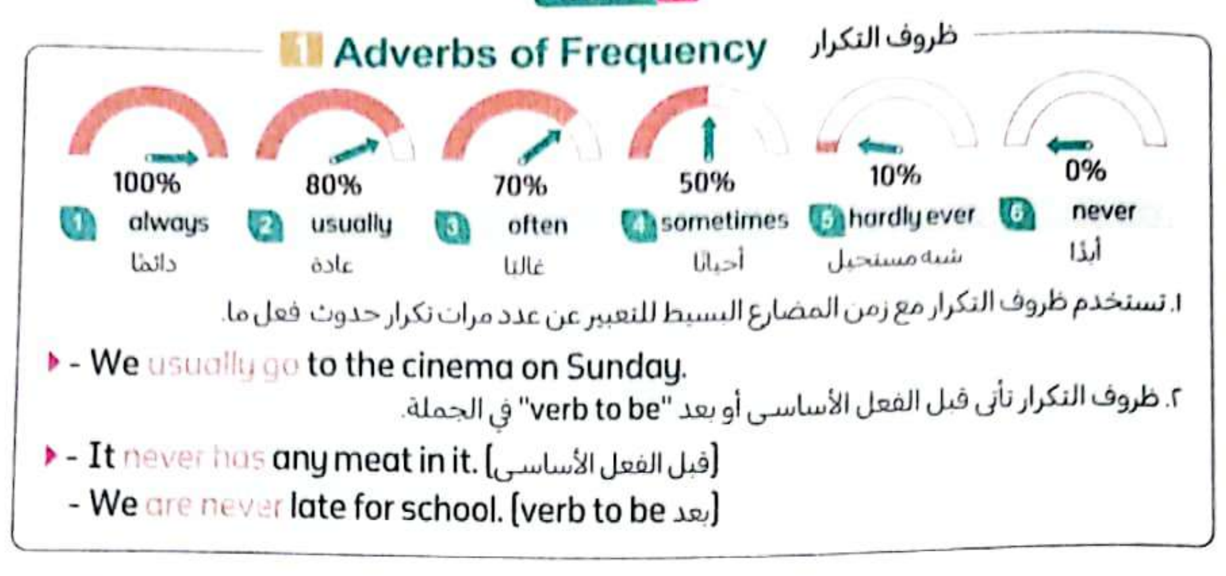
Pop Quiz on Language

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... they coming over for dinner ?
   a. Is b. Am c. Are d. Has
2. He isn't .... very hard.
   a. works b. working c. worked d. work
3. My sister is .... English.
   a. learned b. learns c. learn d. learning
4. They are .... to music.
   a. listening b. listened c. listen d. listens
5. She .... to the new girl in her class at the moment.
   a. speaks b. is speaking c. has spoken d. spoke

Unit 8

1 Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



١. تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

- We usually go to the cinema on Sunday.

٢. ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى أو بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

- It never has any meat in it. (قبل الفعل الأساسى)
- We are never late for school. (بعد verb to be)

2 The present simple and present continuous tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

	Present simple المضارع البسيط	Present continuous المضارع المستمر
Formation التكوين	I, We, You, They → inf. مصدر الفعل He, She, It → inf. + (s/es/ies) ▸ They often like to do sports. ▸ She doesn't get up early on Saturdays. ▸ What do you usually wear to do sports? - I usually wear T-shirts and shorts.	Subject + (am/is/are) + inf. + ing ▸ He is doing his homework now. ▸ They aren't playing games. ▸ Is he drawing now? - Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.



Pop Quiz on Language

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I'm always on time. I'm .... late.
   a. usually b. sometimes c. never d. always
2. Right now, Dina is .... to her manager.
   a. talks b. talking c. talked d. talk
3. My parents .... in a two-bedroom apartment.
   a. lives b. live c. to live d. living

4. He ………………………… a sunburn.

a. always get b. gets always c. always gets d. get always

5. She doesn't ………………………… a brother.

a. having b. had c. has d. have

Unit 9

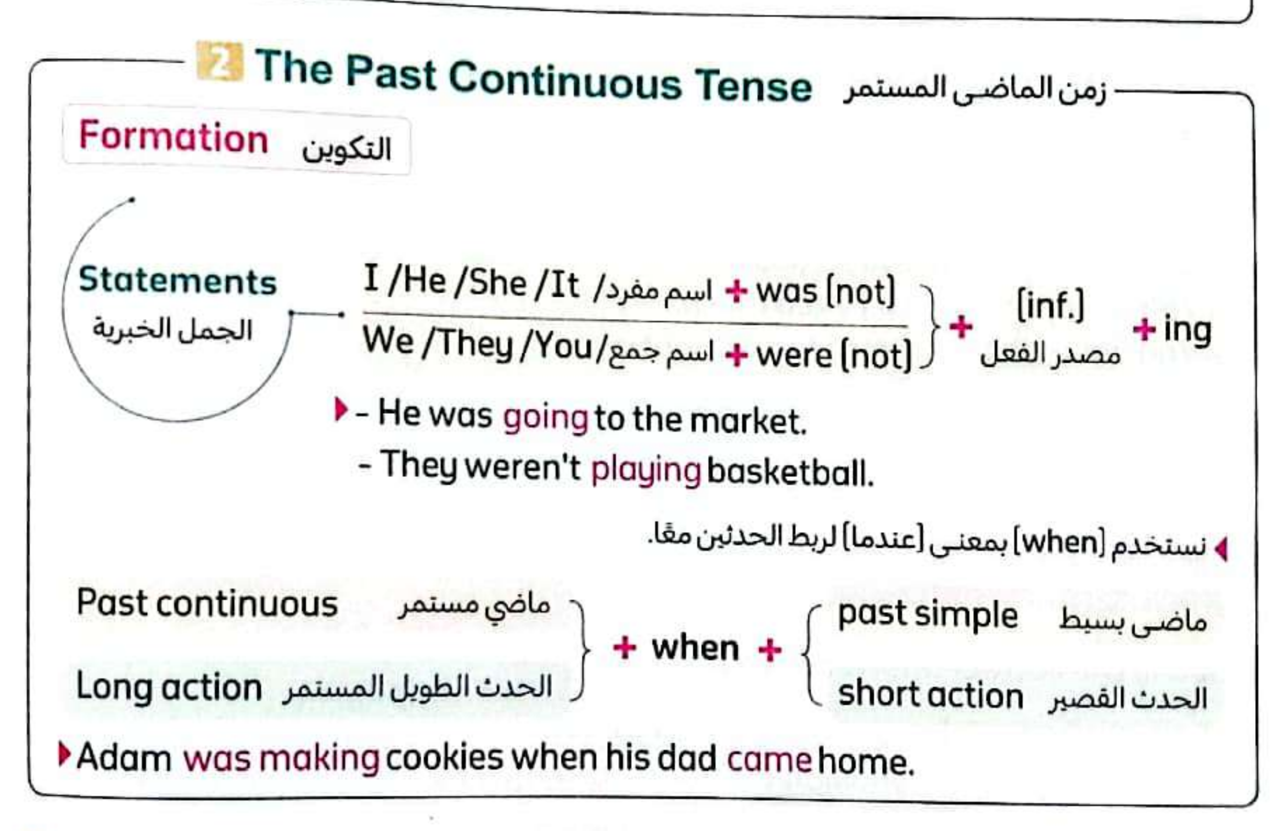
1 Review on the Past Simple Tense مراجعة على زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- wash → washed
- buy → bought

- She went to the club yesterday.
- Archaeologists found the game in the desert.



2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Formation التكوين

Statements الجمل الخبرية

I /He /She /It /اسم مفرد + was (not) } + [inf.] مصدر الفعل + ing

We /They /You/اسم جمع + were (not) }

- He was going to the market.
- They weren't playing basketball.

نستخدم (when) بمعنى (عندما) لربط الحدثين معًا.

Past continuous ماضي مستمر / Long action الحدث الطويل المستمر + when + past simple ماضي بسيط / short action الحدث القصير

- Adam was making cookies when his dad came home.

Pop Quiz on Language

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I ………………………… a museum with my parents yesterday.

a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting

2. I was studying in the library when I ………………………… Ahmed.

a. saw b. see c. sees d. seeing

3. When the archaeologists .... an old box, they were digging.
   a. was finding   b. found   c. find   d. finds

4. He was .... his backpack on his way to school.
   a. carry   b. carries   c. carrying   d. to carry

5. The goats .... walking away over a small hill.
   a. was   b. were   c. is   d. has



Unit 10

Modal verbs for advice الأفعال الشرطية للنصيحة

Formation التكوين

Statements الجمل الخبرية
- Subject + should + inf.
- Subject + shouldn't + inf.

1. To advise someone to do or not to do something.
لتنصح شخص ما بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء ما.
2. To say that something is a good or bad idea. لتقول أن شيء ما يكون فكرة جيدة أو سيئة.

- You should eat more fruit.
- You should eat less fast food.
- You shouldn't watch TV too much.
- You shouldn't work too long without a break.

Notice shouldn't = should not

Pop Quiz on Language

05 min

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I am really tired. I .... have a rest.
   a. should   b. shouldn't   c. should to   d. shouldn't to

2. I am hungry. I should .... some fruit.
   a. ate   b. eaten   c. eating   d. eat

3. I .... study hard. I have a difficult math test tomorrow.
   a. shouldn't   b. should   c. should to   d. shouldn't to

4. You .... be afraid to ask your teacher for help.
   a. shouldn't   b. shouldn't to   c. should to   d. should

5. You shouldn't .... your writing. Share it with your friends.
   a. hid   b. hidden   c. hide   d. hiding



• Comparative adjectives	• Superlative adjectives
Short adjectives	
short adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than	the + short adj. + est
• fast → faster than • old → older than	• fast → the fastest • old → the oldest
Long adjectives	
more أكثر + long adj. صفة طويلة + than	the most أكثر + long adj. صفة طويلة
less أقل + long adj. صفة طويلة + than	the least الأقل + long adj. صفة طويلة
• interesting → more interesting than أكثر إثارة من • popular → less popular than أقل شعبية من	• the most beautiful الأكثر جمالاً • the least dangerous الأقل خطورة

• Prefix

Prefix البادئة →	re- مرة أخرى	un- لا - غير	dis- لا - غير
	recycle يعيد تصنيع	unhappy غير سعيد	disagree لا يوافق
	reuse يعيد استخدام	unhealthy غير صحي	dishonest غير أمين
		unfriendly غير ودود	



Pop Quiz on Language

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. A gold medal is .... than a silver medal.
   a. best b. better c. good d. well
2. Football is .... than tennis.
   a. more popular b. the popular c. popular d. most popular
3. I'd like to be the .... volunteer in my neighborhood.
   a. better b. good c. well d. best
4. Cairo is .... city in Egypt.
   a. the largest b. the large c. larger d. large
5. The opposite of "happy" is " .... ".
   a. happiest b. unhappy c. happy d. happier



Unit 12

1 The Future with "will" المستقبل باستخدام (will)

Subject + will + (inf.) ... ▸ - I will travel tomorrow.

Subject + will not / won't + (inf.) ... ▸ - She won't watch the TV in the evening.

2 The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Formation التكوين

- If / When (إذا / لو - عندما) → present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) → (inf.) (مصدر الفعل)
- Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) → + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) if / when (إذا / لو - عندما) → Present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

▸ - If we use electric vehicles, our cities will be cleaner.
- Tarek will save money if he makes his own electricity.

3 Conjunctions الروابط

and و	I eat vegetables	**and**	I exercise.
but لكن	I want to play volleyball	**, but**	I hurt my leg.
or أو	We must stop deforestation	**or**	we won't save the planet.
so لذلك	I was tired	**so**	I went to bed.

05 min. Pop Quiz on Language

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We .... find ways to save water in the future.
   a. do b. be c. had d. will
2. What will he .... with all the extra money?
   a. does b. did c. doing d. do
3. If there is a drought, plants ....
   a. died b. will die c. dying d. dies
4. .... dad stops washing the car, he won't waste water.
   a. Where b. So c. But d. If
5. I like reading stories .... newspapers.
   a. to b. so c. and d. but

Day 3



Listening, Reading & Writing Skills

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

السؤال الأول فى الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن أن يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع مكون من ٥٠ كلمة ويقوم الطالب بوضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There aren't many houses or buildings in the .... environment.
   a. urban b. city c. rural d. town
2. The rural environment is a .... place to live.
   a. noise b. loud c. quiet d. bad
3. The urban environment is .... populated.
   a. densely b. sparsely c. empty d. silent
4. There can be a lot of traffic in the .... environment.
   a. desert b. polar c. rural d. urban

السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

harvesting - water - fertile - growing

There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt. The flooding season was from June to September. The fields were full of (1)........................ for four months. The growing season was from October to February. The water went away and the soil was rich and (2)........................ . In the (3)........................ season, farmers cut the crops and stored them safely.

or Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

park - friends - statues - Museum

Mona : Where did you go yesterday?

Heba : I went to visit the Egyptian (1)........................ .

Mona : Who did you go with?

Heba : I went with my (2)........................ .

Mona : What did you see there?

Heba : We saw a lot of (3)........................ and monuments.

 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There's a lot of more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. Men sometimes wear a striped kaftan over this with a hizam, which is a colored **sash** around their body. Men and women also wear items on their heads such as scarves or different styles of hats. In some cities, though, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "**sash**" means ....
   a. dress b. belt c. crown d. skirt
2. The general idea of the text is ....
   a. Egyptian festival b. Egyptian food c. Egyptian Museum d. Traditional Egyptian clothing
3. Many people still prefer .... clothes.
   a. loose b. tight c. small d. woolen

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What do men and women wear on their heads ?

....

5. What type of clothing do many people still prefer ?

....

السؤال الرابع في الورقة الامتحانية

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ☐
2. Too much plastic is good for the birds. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Amir saw .... transporting plastic bottles of water from the roof.
   a. trains b. cars c. carts d. trucks
2. Dalia will .... her cousins in other villages.
   a. hide b. contact c. read d. give

السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - country - Egypt - to visit - a fantastic.

....

2. about - learning - They - climate - change - are.

....

3. eat - bread - always - ful medames - People - with.

....

Day 4



Important paragraphs and Emails

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني التى وردت بالمنهج

السؤال السابع فى الورقة الامتحانية

"Energy around us"

We have many kinds of energy. We have renewable and non-renewable energies. Renewable energy is clean. We have solar energy from the sun. We have tidal energy from the moving water. We have geothermal energy in hot places. Non-renewable energies can run out like fossil fuels and gas. These are burned in factories and this causes pollution. We can't find more of them.

"Visiting a museum"

The girl was in the museum with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts. The girl was reading the information about each artifact. They saw artifact looks like an old senet game. The archaeologists found it in the desert near Luxor.

"Egypt"

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. It has so much to see. It has the Pyramids of Giza and the Red Sea. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with drink and food, and for inviting guests to their homes. Egypt has many traditional meals like rice, vegetable stew and stuffed vegetables.

"Air pollution"

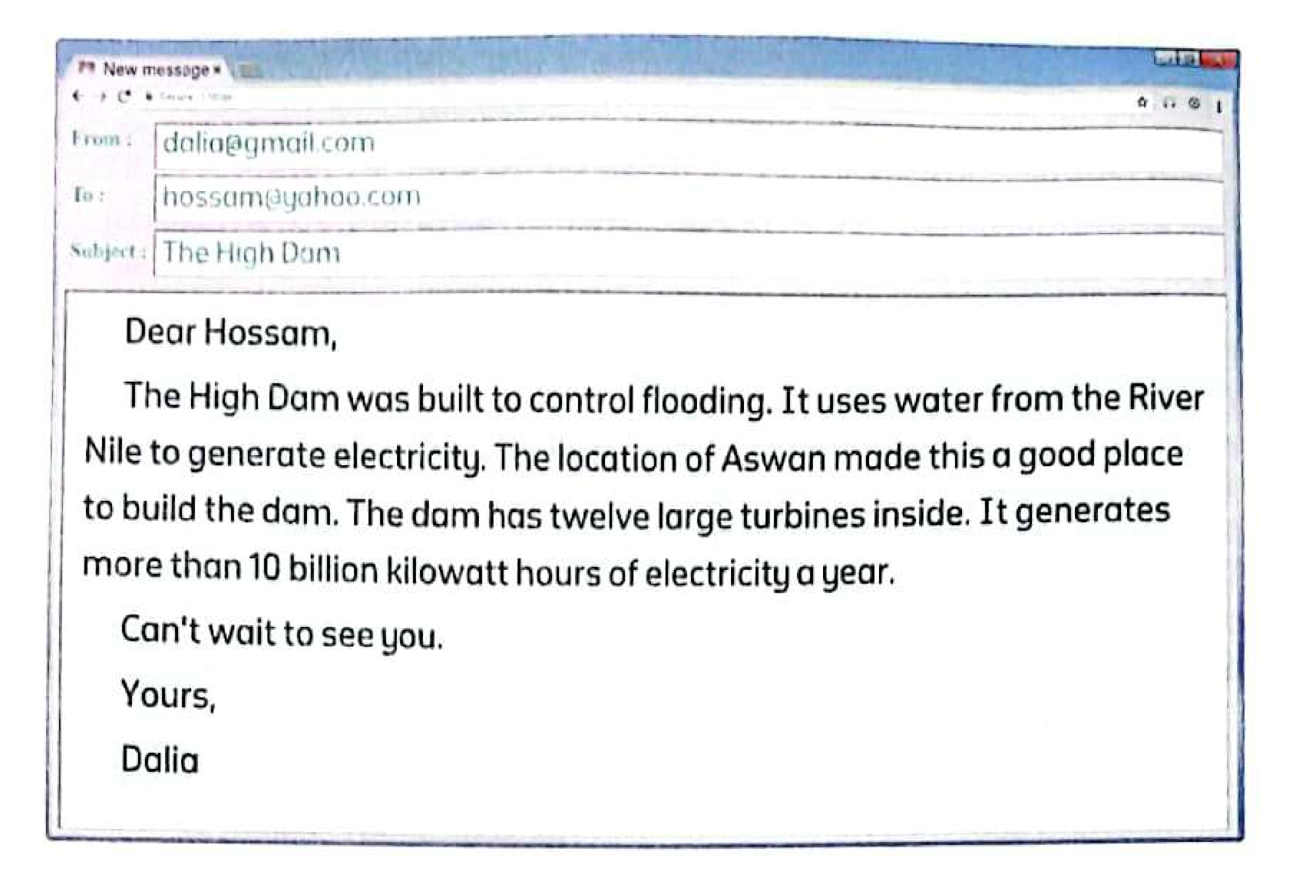
Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

"Problems of transportation"

Transportation causes a lot of problems. Some vehicles use gasoline, which causes air pollution. People bought cars to make their lives easier. Today, there are electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships that don't use gasoline.

"Erosion"

Erosion is a natural process. It happens by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry.


New message
From : dalia@gmail.com
To : hossam@yahoo.com
Subject : The High Dam

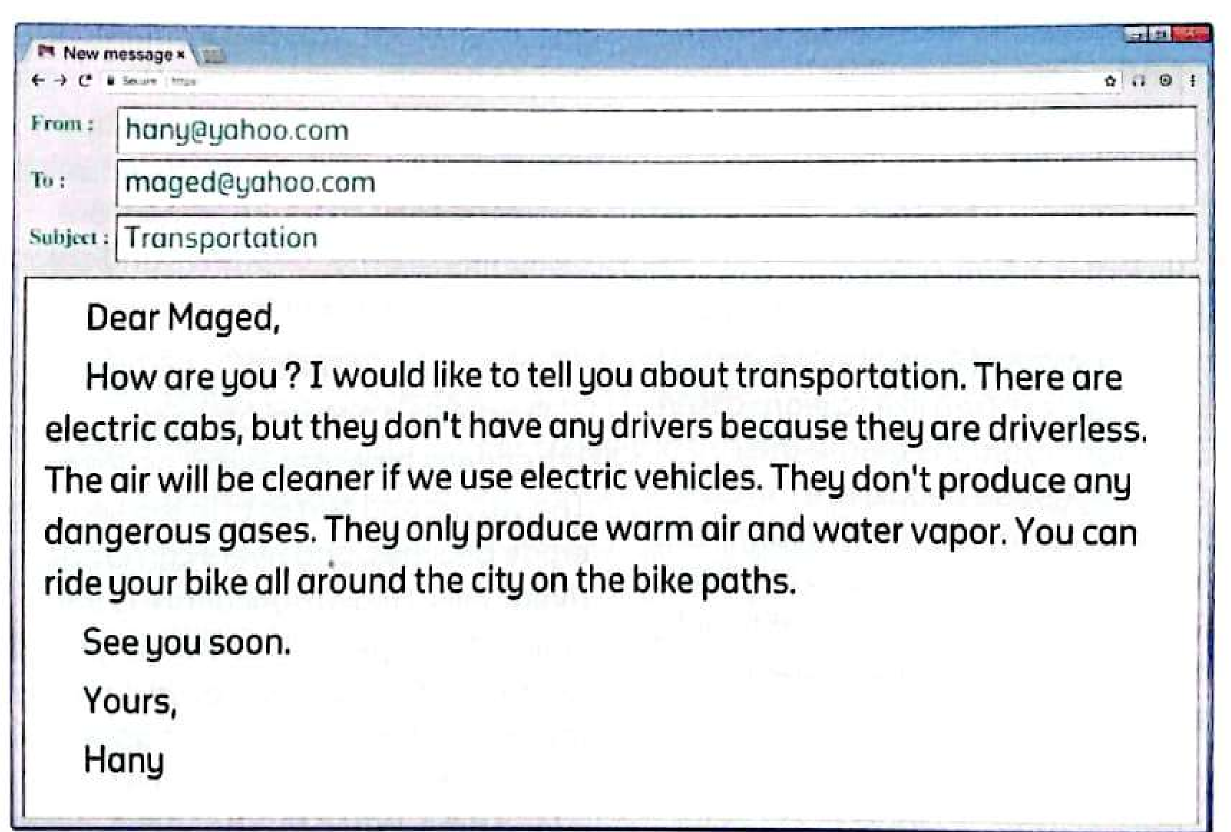
Dear Hossam,

The High Dam was built to control flooding. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year.

Can't wait to see you.

Yours,

Dalia


New message
From : hany@yahoo.com
To : maged@yahoo.com
Subject : Transportation

Dear Maged,

How are you ? I would like to tell you about transportation. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. The air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. They don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.

See you soon.

Yours,

Hany

Days 5,6 &7

12 Governorates Exams

١٢ اختبارًا من المحافظات المختلفة

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

1 Cairo Governorate

Shoubra Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can use hydroelectricity to generate ....
   a. electricity b. oil c. coal d. gas
2. The High Dam was finished in ....
   a. 1961 b. 1971 c. 1981 d. 1991
3. The location of .... made this a good place to build the dam.
   a. Giza b. Luxor c. Damietta d. Aswan
4. The dam has .... large turbines inside.
   a. ten b. eleven c. twelve d. thirteen

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

keep - doing - garbage - clay

Omar : What are you (1) .... , Ali ?
Ali : I am creating a website about pollution on Mount Everest.
Omar : How are people helping to (2) .... the environment clean there ?
Ali : They don't leave any (3) .... on the mountain.
Omar : They are amazing.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Egypt is a **fantastic** country to visit. There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example some chocolate or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. Egyptian food b. Egyptian students
   c. Egyptian teachers d. Egyptian traditions
2. Egyptian people are famous for ....
   a. welcoming visitors b. spicy food
   c. making chocolate d. new clothes

3. The underlined word "fantastic" means ....
a. wonderful b. bad c. ugly d. angry

B. **Answer the following questions :**

4. What places can visitors visit in Egypt ?

....

5. Are Egyptians friendly with visitors ?

....

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. ☐
2. Amir sent emails to his cousins. ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. It was .... on the roof.
a. hot b. cold c. windy d. rainy

2. Amir's .... volunteered to help.
a. grandpa b. grandma c. uncle d. aunt

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We give .... meat to our friends and families at Eid Al-Adha.
a. in b. on c. out d. of

2. I usually .... colorful clothes in Sham El-Nessim.
a. wearing b. wears c. wear d. wore

3. Look ! He .... in the garden.
a. is jumping b. are jumping c. jumped d. jump

4. The children .... play football in the street.
a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. aren't

5. I played the match well, ... I didn't win.
a. and b. so c. or d. but

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. has – environment – Which – very – water – little ?

....

2. about – learning – They – climate change – are.

....

3. celebrating – I – El-Nessim – Sham – love.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite dish

Guiding elements :

fatta – rice – bread – sauce – digest – Eid Al-Adha – sheep – give out

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eid Al-Adha lasts for .... days.
   a. four b. two c. three d. five
2. .... is a very important Islamic festival.
   a. Eid Al-Adha b. Sham El-Nessim
   c. Christmas d. Ramadan
3. In Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a ....
   a. dog b. sheep c. chicken d. lion
4. People go to the .... for prayers.
   a. office b. mosque c. hospital d. library

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

sights – generous – Pyramids – visitors

Ayman : Welcome to Egypt.
Tourist : Thank you.
Ayman : What places did you visit in Egypt ?
Tourist : I visited the (1) .... of Giza.
Ayman : Do you like Egypt ?
Tourist : Yes, it has lots of amazing (2) ....
Ayman : Do you like the Egyptian people ?
Tourist : Yes, they are (3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable; when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Coal, ... and oil are fossil fuels.
   a. gas b. water c. sun d. wind
2. Fossil fuels are ....
   a. renewable b. non-renewable c. continuous d. new
3. Fossil fuels are burned in ....
   a. rivers b. seas c. schools d. factories

B. **Answer the following questions :**

4. What are fossil fuels made from ?

....

5. What happens when we burn fossil fuels ?

....

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. ☐
2. Amir took some pictures with his phone. ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. You can wash your .... in a washing machine.
   a. clothes b. food c. paper d. roof
2. Plastic trash can .... the birds.
   a. make b. help c. harm d. put

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You should .... less fast food.
   a. eating b. eat c. ate d. eats
2. She doesn't .... to school on Fridays.
   a. going b. went c. goes d. go
3. He .... to some traditional Egyptian music now.
   a. listen b. listened c. is listening d. are listening
4. He .... watching a TV program about nature.
   a. does b. are c. am d. is
5. Last week, we .... our grandparents in Aswan.
   a. visit b. visited c. visiting d. visits

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. today – What – wearing – you – are ?

....

2. to – for prayers – We – the mosque – go.

....

3. eat – bread – with – We – beans – always.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

What you have for breakfast

Guiding elements :

ful medames – garlic – lemon juice – onion – salad – cheese – falafel – with bread – delicious

....

....

3 Alexandria Governorate   Gomrok Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Walaa has two ....
   a. brothers   b. cousins   c. friends   d. sisters
2. Hend is .... years old.
   a. 13   b. 14   c. 15   d. 16
3. Mona wants to be a ....
   a. doctor   b. nurse   c. teacher   d. vet
4. .... likes drawing pictures.
   a. Hend   b. Mona   c. Noha   d. Walaa

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

cookies – festival – friends – mosques

Eid is a time for celebration and for being happy. All the people say "Eid Mubarak" to their (1) .... People go to the (2) .... and spend time with their families. They eat delicious (3) .... like kahk to celebrate.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Last night, Sahar stayed at home and her best friend, Nourhan, visited her. They talked and listened to music. They played on her computer and then watched TV. Sahar asked her friend to choose a programme. They watched a cartoon and a nature programme. The nature programme was very **interesting**. Suddenly, it was time for bed because it was very late. Nourhan went home.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sahar asked her friend to choose a ....
   a. drink   b. game   c. programme   d. story
2. The friends watched a ....
   a. documentary   b. film
   c. movie   d. nature programme
3. The underlined word "**interesting**" means ....
   a. bad   b. boring   c. enjoyable   d. nervous

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Who visited Sahar last night ?

   ....

5. Why was it time for bed ?

   ....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ( )
2. Amir took a picture of a seagull with his camera. ( )

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Amir took the .... up to the roof to hang it.
   a. food   b. fruits   c. laundry   d. sweets
2. Trucks transported .... bottles of water.
   a. wooden   b. plastic   c. metal   d. glass

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. .... are walking to school today.
   a. He   b. I   c. She   d. They
2. .... you listening to a podcast about emissions at school ?
   a. Am   b. Are   c. Is   d. Was
3. Hana .... watching a TV programme.
   a. am   b. are   c. is   d. were
4. Look ! The bird is .... in the sky.
   a. flying   b. fly   c. flies   d. flew
5. I was driving my car when I .... the accident.
   a. saw   b. see   c. seeing   d. sees

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. made – from – What – are – fossil – fuels ?

....

2. environment – help – protect – Forests – the – to.

....

3. energy – We – turbines – use – make – to.

....

7 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Adel. Tell him about the High Dam. Your name is Omar. Your email address is omar@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adel@gmail.com.

Guiding elements :

Aswan – electricity – flooding

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eman is in primary ....
 a. three b. six c. five d. four
2. Eman goes to school ....
 a. by bus b. by car c. by taxi d. on foot
3. Rahma likes .... very much.
 a. Arabic b. English c. French d. math
4. Rahma's favorite game is ....
 a. volleyball b. football c. tennis d. basketball

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

learn – agriculture – sites – Archaeologists

Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. (1) .... have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical (2) .... at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I visited museums with my parents to (3) .... about things people did in the past.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Last month was Ramadan. Abduallah made a special lantern to celebrate Ramadan. After Ramadan comes the 10^{th} month called Shawwal. Shawwal is a celebratory month, with Eid Al-Fitr taking place from the first to the third day. Lots of food and **gifts** are exchanged during Shawwal. Many people fast the six days in Shawwal. Eid Al-Fitr is a very important Islamic festival. We wear our best clothes for the celebration and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. After Ramadan we celebrate ....
 a. Eid Al-Adha b. Eid Al-Fitr
 c. Sham El-Nessim d. Flooding
2. The underlined word "**gifts**" has the same meaning as ".......................... ".
 a. books b. visits c. trips d. presents
3. Eid Al-Fitr lasts for .... days.
 a. three b. four c. five d. seven

B. **Answer the following questions :**

4. What did Abdu Allah do last Ramadan ?

5. How do Muslims celebrate Eid Al-Fitr ?

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. Amir and his friends couldn't make change.
2. Waleed's dad would use plastic bags instead of biodegradable.

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Amir took the laundry up to the ....
   a. ground b. roof c. Nile d. garden
2. Grandma volunteered to ....
   a. swim b. go c. sleep d. help

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We .... our English exam now.
   a. takes b. took c. taking d. are taking
2. Nada always .... to school early by bus.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. is going
3. .... you happy yesterday ? Yes, I was.
   a. Was b. Are c. Did d. Were
4. We .... waste our time.
   a. shouldn't b. must c. should d. aren't
5. The children .... playing a game.
   a. is b. am c. were d. was

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians – clay – made – Ancient – from – pottery vases.

....

2. plant – Egypt – How – trees – did – many ?

....

3. tree – a – was – He – under – sitting.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your trip to Alexandria

Guiding elements :

last summer – sea – family – hotel – enjoyed

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The coastal environment is next to the ....
   a. land b. forest c. desert d. sea
2. There are beaches with ....
   a. sand b. land c. hand d. stand
3. There are swamps and ....
   a. animals b. parks c. forests d. mountains
4. The .... Delta is an example of coastal environment.
   a. Nile b. sea c. desert d. sand

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

favorite – What – do – spring

Mona : Do you like festivals ?
Hany : Yes, I (1) ....
Mona : What is your (2) .... festival ?
Hany : It is Sham El-Nessim.
Mona : When is Sham El-Nessim ?
Hany : It is at the start of (3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

My name is Sam. Last weekend, I went on a school trip. I went to Aswan. I went with my friends. We went there by train. The journey was long but it was **interesting**. We visited the High Dam. It uses water from the Nile to make electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place for the Dam to stop the Nile from flooding. The Dam has twelve turbines inside. I took photos. I was very happy. It was a great project.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sam went on a trip last ....
   a. month b. year c. weekend d. Monday
2. They went there by ....
   a. bus b. train c. car d. plane
3. The underlined word " **interesting**" is the opposite of ....
   a. nice b. boring c. wonderful d. good

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What did Sam visit in Aswan ?

....

5. How many turbines are there inside the Dam?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Amir took the washing to the garden. ☐
2. Trucks transported plastic bottles. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plastic .... was around the seagull's leg.
   a. bag b. bottle c. car d. bin
2. Amir took pictures of the seagull with his ....
   a. computer b. tablet c. camera d. phone

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What are you .... now?
   a. doing b. do c. does d. did
2. If we .... electric vehicles, our cities will be cleaner.
   a. use b. will use c. uses d. used
3. .... he wear loose clothes?
   a. Does b. Do c. Are d. Have
4. Did he help his dad? - Yes, he ....
   a. are b. did c. do d. is
5. I was .... in the desert when I saw something in the sand.
   a. working b. work c. works d. worked

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Iceland – a cold – is – country.

....

2. often – It – in – rains – the rainforest.

....

3. Egypt – every year – Many – visit – tourists.

....

7 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Eyad. Tell him about your favorite festival. Your name is Asser. Your email address is asser@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is eyad@gmail.com.

Guiding elements:

eat – salted fish – colord eggs – go to parks – in spring – picnic – Sham El-Nessim – have fun – family

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My favorite festival is ....
   a. Sham El-Nessim b. Eid Al-Adha c. Eid Al-Fitr d. Christmas
2. Eid Al-Fitr comes after ....
   a. Ragab b. Ramadan c. Shawwal d. April
3. At Eid Al-Fitr we eat ....
   a. fatta b. kahk c. salted fish d. cheese
4. We wear our best clothes for the ....
   a. Ramadan b. party c. celebrations d. class

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

generous – typical – kahk – traditional

A traditional Egyptian meal is served. A (1) .... meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very (2) .... Some Egyptian festivals have (3) .... food. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake kahk with sugar on top.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

El Fayoum is a town near the desert. It is a big oasis. We can go there by car, by bus or by train. There are many fields with canals and farmers grow many crops and plants. North of the town there is a big lake. It is Lake Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people like to visit El Fayoum.

I visited El Fayoum last year. I went with my family. The weather was sunny. I enjoyed my time there very much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. El Fayoum is near the ....
   a. field b. lake c. desert d. Aswan
2. This text is about " .... ".
   a. Luxor b. El Fayoum c. Aswan d. Canals
3. The town is famous for its big ....
   a. oasis b. river c. waterwheels d. parks

B. Answer the following questions :

4. How do people go to El Fayoum ?

....

5. Where is Lake Qarun ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ( )
2. Amir took the laundry up to the roof. ( )

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amir could see plastic bottles floating down on the ....
   a. sink b. river c. road d. sea
2. Amir took the .... up to the roof.
   a. dishes b. bottles c. laundry d. bags

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The sun .... in the morning.
   a. rises b. are rising c. rise d. rising
2. He .... eat meat.
   a. isn't b. doesn't c. don't d. aren't
3. Will Tarek .... an electric car?
   a. buying b. buys c. bought d. buy
4. The man traveled .... many other sailors.
   a. at b. by c. with d. on
5. You shouldn't .... your writing. Share it with your friends.
   a. hid b. hidden c. hide d. hiding

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a giant – saw – I – waves – in – snake – the.

   ....

2. is – it – Why – to – important – trees – plant?

   ....

3. you – How – check – facts – the – can?

   ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your trip to Aswan

Guiding elements:

last week – Aswan – sun festival – family – hotel – enjoyed

....

....

....

7 Gharbia Governorate

East Tanta Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Non-renewable energy is things like coal, ... and oil.
   a. oxygen b. water c. gas d. copper
2. Fossil fuels are ....
   a. renewable b. non-renewable
   c. electrical d. mechanical
3. Fossil fuels are burned in ....
   a. streets b. parks c. schools d. factories
4. Fossil fuels are used to make homes and buildings ....
   a. cold b. warm c. clean d. dirty

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

survive – plants – dry – wet

There are several environments. For example, it is very (1) .... in the desert. Animals and (2) .... that live in this environment have to find clever ways to (3) .... without a lot of water. We can find this environment on every continent. The climate can be hot or cold.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ahmed, Hani and Sami had a picnic last Friday. They went to the zoo. While they were playing, Sami fell over and broke his leg. Ahmed phoned Sami's father who came quickly with Sami's mother. Ahmed and Hani helped Sami and his father drove to the nearest hospital. A doctor came and asked him not to walk on his broken leg for a month. Ahmed and Hani visited Sami every day. They helped him study his lessons. When Sami came back to school, they were very happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The three boys went to the zoo ....
   a. next Friday b. last Friday c. tomorrow d. next week
2. Sami fell over and broke his ....
   a. arm b. hand c. head d. leg
3. This text is about a/an " .... ".
   a. school subject b. picnic c. healthy food d. animal

B. Answer the following questions :

4. How was Sami taken to hospital ?

....

5. Who helped Sami to study his lessons? ....

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

1. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his grandma's phone. ☐
2. Amir took the laundry up to the roof. ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Seagulls live near the .... and eat fish.
   a. desert b. sea c. forest d. mountain
2. Amir could see plastic bottles floating down the ....
   a. sink b. road c. river d. sea

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What .... you wearing today?
   a. is b. are c. am d. do
2. The children were .... a game yesterday.
   a. play b. plays c. played d. playing
3. Ancient Egyptians .... lots of pottery.
   a. used b. using c. uses d. use
4. I do not .... to school on Fridays.
   a. go b. gone c. goes d. going
5. I .... some cyberfriends online yesterday.
   a. make b. made c. making d. makes

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is – statue – the largest – in – This – Egypt.
   ....
2. you – How – environment – help – can – the?
   ....
3. learning – how – school – We're – to type – at.
   ....

7 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Hala. Tell her about going to the park. Your name is Noha. Your email address is noha@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is hala@gmail.com.

Guiding elements:

Friday – visit – park – family – play – eat – lunch – enjoy – happy

....
....
....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Kárahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant is in ....
   a. Egypt b. America c. Iceland d. France
2. There are .... dams across two rivers.
   a. five b. four c. six d. one
3. The Kárahnjúkar Dam generates more than .... kilowatts a year.
   a. 690,000 b. 730,000 c. 10 billion d. 193
4. It took .... years to build.
   a. three b. six c. ten d. five

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

seasons – civilization – farmer – flood

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to (1) .... every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in (2) .... There were three (3) .... of farming in ancient Egypt which were all connected to the Nile.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Lama lives in Mansoura with her family. Today she is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with **them**. She wears her best dress and new shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursday, but today is a holiday. The whole family is together. Grandma sits in the living room. Lama's brother, Omar, gives his grandparents some special cakes. Eid Al-Fitr is Lama's favorite festival.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a. Celebrating Eid b. Month of Ramadan
   c. Celebrating Christmas d. Celebrating Sham El-Nessim
2. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. grandparents b. family
   c. parents d. Lama's friends
3. Lama lives in ....
   a. Luxor b. Aswan c. Mansoura d. Cairo

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does Omar give his grandparents ?
....
5. Why doesn't Lama go to school on that Thursday ?
....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Waleed took a picture of the poor bird. ☐
2. Anissa's dad works at school. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Dalia sent emails to all her ....
   a. babies b. cousins c. sisters d. brothers
2. Using too much plastic is ....
   a. harmful b. nice c. happy d. good

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. They were .... for old artifacts when they found a tomb.
   a. look b. looked c. looking d. looks
2. Are Amgad and Omar .... computer games ?
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. played
3. Look ! He .... the mountain easily.
   a. climb b. are climbing c. is climbing d. climbing
4. We .... go to school on Friday.
   a. often b. usually c. always d. never
5. They .... cleaning their rooms now.
   a. am b. have c. are d. is

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. urban – densely – The – is – populated – environment.

....

2. many – How – tourists – to Luxor – travel ?

....

3. message – a – An instant message – private – is.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Our beloved Egypt

Guiding elements :

- What places can you see in Egypt ?
- What are Egyptians famous for ?

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Eid Al-Adha lasts for .... days.
   a. four b. two c. three d. five
2. .... is a very important Islamic festival.
   a. Christmas b. Ramadan c. Sham El-Nessim d. Eid Al-Adha
3. Many people on that day sacrifice a ....
   a. dog b. chicken c. sheep d. lion
4. People go to the .... for prayers.
   a. office b. mosque c. hospital d. library

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

paper – bright – jar – candle

This year for Ramadan, I made a special lantern. I washed a glass (1)................ and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric (2)................ to put inside. I hung it on the front of our house. It's pretty and (3)................ at the night time.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sites, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example some chocolate or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get <u>it</u>.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. Egyptian weather b. Egyptian students
   c. Egyptian teachers d. Egyptian traditions
2. Egyptian people are famous for ....
   a. welcoming visitors b. spicy food
   c. making chocolate d. new clothes
3. The .... are in Giza.
   a. temples b. Red Sea c. Pyramids d. tower

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What places can visitors visit in Egypt ?

....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

1. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his tablet. ( )
2. Too much plastic is good for the birds. ( )

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Amir's .... volunteered to help them.
   a. grandma b. uncle c. father d. aunt
2. Amir could see the Nile from the ....
   a. window b. roof c. kitchen d. living room

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What are you .... now?
   a. do b. doing c. does d. did
2. Does she .... her bed?
   a. making b. makes c. make d. made
3. I usually .... my birthday with a big cake.
   a. celebrate b. celebrates c. celebrating d. celebrated
4. We .... wear jackets in summer.
   a. doesn't b. aren't c. don't d. isn't
5. He often .... meat for lunch.
   a. eats b. eat c. eating d. to eat

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. dishes – We – traditional – have – many.

....

2. has – environment – Which – water – little?

....

3. today – wearing – you – What – are?

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding elements:

- the start of spring
- traditional food we eat in it

....

....

....

10 Port Said Governorate

East Port Said Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. What grade is Fareeda ? She is in grade ....
   a. five b. four c. three d. one
2. Where does Fareeda spend her free-time ? ....
   a. In the club b. In the school c. On the internet d. In the zoo
3. What does Fareeda make ? She makes good ....
   a. fries b. friends c. lunch d. dinner
4. What can Fareeda write ? ....
   a. A picture b. A video c. A blog d. An email

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

eat – make – delicious – hawawshi

Maha : Hello Ali.
Ali : Hello Maha.
Maha : What are you cooking ?
Ali : I am cooking (1).................... .
Maha : How do you (2).................... it ?
Ali : It is made with bread and beef.
Maha : Is it (3).................... ?
Ali : Yes, it is.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A big black cat lives in my street. It walks up and down the street every day. The cat has no family or friends. It likes to eat from the rubbish. One day, it chased a **large** dog all the way home. The black cat is not scared of other dogs or cats. It looks old and its fur is always dirty. I want to bring it to my home, but dad says it belongs to the street.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Where does the black cat live ? It lives in the ....
   a. house b. street c. home d. rubbish
2. The cat is ....
   a. scared b. weak c. strong d. small
3. The underlined word "**large**" means ....
   a. small b. tiny c. big d. high

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the black cat like to do ?

....

5. Why can't they take the black cat home?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. ☐
2. Anissa asked her dad to stop using plastic bags. ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amir sent the .... of the seagull to his friends.
   a. cloth b. photo c. egg d. baby
2. Grandma can help by .... cotton bags.
   a. washing b. cutting c. sewing d. watching

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Look, the boys are ....
   a. play b. playing c. plays d. played
2. They don't .... the galabeya.
   a. wore b. wears c. wear d. wearing
3. My sister .... a film with her friends last Monday.
   a. saw b. seeing c. see d. sees
4. Mona is .... than Adel.
   a. shortest b. the shortest c. short d. shorter
5. White .... a good color to wear in hot days.
   a. are b. am c. is d. be

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. eat – should – You – fruit – too – many.

....

2. funny – movies – watching – like – you – Do?

....

3. of – type – are – Sandals – shoes – a.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Visiting Pyramids

Guiding elements:

yesterday – car – family – visit – see – tourist – photos – time

....

....

....

....

11 Beheira Governorate

Aboul-Mtameer Zone

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My favorite festival is
   a. Sham El-Nessim b. Christmas
   c. Eid Al-Adha d. Ramadan
2. In Sham El-Nessim, we paint and decorate
   a. meat b. fruits c. vegetables d. eggs
3. We eat .... at Eid Al-Fitr.
   a. kunafa b. salted fish c. kahk d. koshari
4. At Eid Al-Adha, we eat ....
   a. fish b. lentil c. koshari d. fatta

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Delta – swamps – sea – sand

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with (1) .... There are (2) .... and forests. The Nile (3) .... is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were **unfriendly** to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**unfriendly**" means ....
   a. sad b. dangerous c. not kind d. lucky
2. The text is about visiting the ....
   a. school b. zoo c. park d. desert
3. My sister was .... when she saw the lion.
   a. frightened b. happy c. excited d. bored

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Why was dad angry ?

....

5. What did Amr try to do ?

....

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

1. Amir lives in a city.
2. Anissa's dad works at school.

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Amir took the .... up to the roof.
   a. food b. laundry c. drinks d. toys
2. A/An .... landed in a nest on top of the neighbor's building.
   a. seagull b. eagle c. sparrow d. lion

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People are .... to stop pollution.
   a. help b. helps c. helping d. helper
2. Dana and Yasmin were .... a museum.
   a. visits b. visiting c. visited d. visit
3. You should .... your story with hand.
   a. write b. writes c. writing d. wrote
4. You .... ask your teacher when you need help.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. can't d. aren't
5. The archaeologists .... digging when they found an old box.
   a. was b. is c. are d. were

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. use – smartphone – I – access – to – a website.
   ....
2. the sun – to get – a good – The desert – place – from – solar energy – is.
   ....
3. game – board – oldest – world's – Senet – the – is.
   ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Social media

Guiding elements:

- What is social media?
- Why do we use social media?
- What are the pros and cons of social media?

....
....
....
....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. There is a lot of .... water underground in Iceland.
   a. snow b. ice c. cold d. hot
2. Hot water is used to heat homes and to make ....
   a. food b. electricity c. steam d. ice
3. When water gets hot, it makes ....
   a. steam b. ice c. cold d. gas
4. The steam comes up and moves .... to make electricity.
   a. water b. panels c. tires d. turbines

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

save – recycle – electricity – renewable

Hana : Hello, Sara ! How are you ?
Sara : I'm fine, thank you.
Hana : What can we do to help the environment ?
Sara : Well, we can (1).................... plastic.
Hana : I agree, but I think it's important to turn off lights and don't waste (2).................... .
Sara : Yes, you are right.
Hana : What can our country do to help the environment ?
Sara : I think our country can help by using more (3).................... energy.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are a lot of trees, plants and flowers in the rainforest environment. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects and birds. It often rains and the temperature is hot. The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta and the Red Sea are examples of this environment.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There are beaches with sand in the .... environment.
   a. rainforest b. polar c. coastal d. zoo
2. This text is about ".................... ".
   a. Insects b. Environments c. Food d. Festivals
3. There is a lot of insects in the .... environment.
   a. polar b. coastal c. zoo d. rainforest

B. **Answer the following questions :**

4. Where is the coastal environment ?

5. What's the weather like in the rainforest environment ?

4 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. Grandma asked Amir to check the washing machine. ( )
2. Anissa's dad works at the restaurant. ( )

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Mariam is one of Dalia's ....
 a. aunts b. cousins c. friends d. neighbors
2. Amir explained his ideas to his ....
 a. mom b. dad c. grandpa d. grandma

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I .... the answers now.
 a. wrote b. write c. writes d. am writing
2. How .... Sara and Ali celebrate Sham El-Nessim ?
 a. do b. does c. is d. are
3. White .... a good color to wear in hot weather.
 a. are b. am c. is d. be
4. They .... play tennis on Fridays.
 a. am b. have c. often d. is
5. Do you know the .... animal in the world ?
 a. slower b. slow c. slowest d. slowly

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is – It – hot – the desert – in.

....

2. lantern – a – made – I – special.

....

3. used – flood - to – The Nile – past – in the.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

My favorite meals

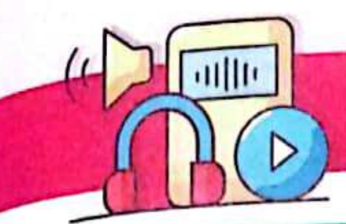
Guiding elements :

fatta – layers – lemon juice – koshari

....

....

....



Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع

Listen and choose the correct answer

- There are different environments. There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment. Not many people live here. It's a quiet place to live in.
  The urban environment is a metropolitan area which is densely populated. There're lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

1 Cairo Governorate
Shoubra Educational Directorate

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
  People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water. We use it to generate electricity. The High Dam was finished in 1971. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam. The dam has twelve large turbines inside.

2 Giza Governorate
6th October Educational Directorate

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
  Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days. It's a very important Islamic festival. Many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat. People go to the mosque for prayers and they are grateful for all the good things in their lives.

3 Alexandria Governorate
Gomrok Educational Directorate

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
  Walaa has two sisters, Hend and Mona. Hend is 13 years old. She likes collecting magnets. Mona is 15 years old. She wants to be a teacher. She likes drawing pictures.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate
Qanater Educational Directorate

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
  Rahma and Eman are twins. They're in primary four. They live near the school. They go to school on foot. Rahma likes math very much. She's clever. Rahma's favorite game is tennis. Eman's favorite game is volleyball.

5 Sharkya Governorate
Diarb Negm Educational Directorate

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
  The coastal environment is next to the sea. There are beaches with sand. There are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example of coastal environment.

6 Menofia Governorate
Tala Educational Directorate

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
  My favorite festival is Eid Al-Fitr. It comes after Ramadan. At Eid Al-Fitr, we eat kahk. We wear our best clothes

for the celebration and we visit our family and friends.

7 Gharbia Governorate
East Tanta Educational Directorate

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas, and oil. They are non-renewable. When they run out, we can't find or make more of them. They're burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm.

8 Dakahlia Governorate
Talkha Educational Directorate

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Kárahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant is in Iceland. There are five dams across two rivers. The Kárahnjúkar Dam generates more than 690,000 kilowatts a year. It took five years to build.

9 Ismailia Governorate
Tal El-Kabeer Educational Directorate

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Eid Al-Adha lasts for four days. It's a very important Islamic festival. Many people on that day sacrifice a sheep. People go to the mosque for prayers.

10 Port Said Governorate
East Port Said Educational Directorate

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fareeda is in grade four. She spends her free-time in the club. She makes good friends. She can write a blog.

11 Beheira Governorate
Aboul-Mtameer Zone

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. In Sham El-Nessim, we paint and decorate eggs. We eat kahk at Eid Al-Fitr. At Eid Al-Adha we eat fatta.

12 El-Minia Governorate
Mallawi Educational Directorate

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

There is a lot of hot water underground in Iceland. Hot water is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes steam. The steam comes up and moves turbines to make electricity.